



**Royal Flying Doctor Service**  
WESTERN OPERATIONS

# Clinical Manual

## Part 1 Clinical Guidelines

Version 7.1  
July 2015

Royal Flying Doctor Service Western Operations  
3 Eagle Drive, Jandakot Airport, Western Australia 6164

T 61-8-9417 6300  
F 61-8-9417 6319  
E [medical@rfdswa.com.au](mailto:medical@rfdswa.com.au)

Clinical Manual - Part 1 - Clinical Guidelines  
Version 7.1  
July 2015

This is a controlled document. Ensure you are using the latest version.

Filename: G:\Health\MEDICAL\Clinical Manual\New Version 7.1 July 2015\Part 1 - Clinical Manual - July 2015 - Version 7.1.docx

Savedate: 24/07/2015 14:49

## Part 1 - Clinical Guidelines

### Table of Contents

|          |  |          |
|----------|--|----------|
| <b>1</b> | <b>LIFE SUPPORT .....</b>                                  | <b>1</b> |
| 1.1      | Basic Life Support Flow Chart.....                         | 1        |
| 1.2      | Newborn Life Support Flow Chart .....                      | 2        |
| 1.3      | Advanced Life Support (Adult) .....                        | 3        |
| 1.4      | Advanced Life Support (Paediatric).....                    | 5        |
| 1.5      | The Deteriorating Patient .....                            | 7        |
| 1.6      | Post Resuscitation Care Checklist .....                    | 10       |
| <b>2</b> | <b>CARDIOVASCULAR .....</b>                                | <b>1</b> |
| 2.1      | Acute Coronary Syndromes .....                             | 1        |
| 2.2      | Acute Pulmonary Oedema .....                               | 6        |
| 2.3      | Cardiac Arrhythmias .....                                  | 8        |
| <b>3</b> | <b>ENDOCRINE .....</b>                                     | <b>1</b> |
| 3.1      | Diabetic Ketoacidosis .....                                | 1        |
| 3.2      | Hypoglycaemia .....  | 3        |
| 3.3      | Hypocalcaemia .....  | 5        |
| <b>4</b> | <b>GASTROINTESTINAL.....</b>                               | <b>1</b> |
| 4.1      | Acute Pancreatitis .....                                   | 1        |
| 4.2      | Haematemesis and Melaena.....                              | 3        |
| 4.3      | Intestinal Obstruction.....                                | 5        |
| <b>5</b> | <b>GENITOURINARY .....</b>                                 | <b>1</b> |
| 5.1      | Acute/Chronic Renal Failure .....                          | 1        |
| <b>6</b> | <b>INFECTIOUS DISEASES .....</b>                           | <b>1</b> |
| 6.1      | Bacterial Meningitis .....                                 | 1        |
| 6.2      | Meningococcal Infection .....                              | 3        |
| 6.3      | Tuberculosis .....   | 5        |
| 6.4      | Melioidosis.....   | 6        |
| 6.5      | Severe Sepsis .....  | 7        |
| <b>7</b> | <b>MENTAL HEALTH.....</b>                                  | <b>1</b> |
| 7.1      | Transfer of Mental Health Patients.....                    | 1        |
| 7.2      | Ketamine for management of acutely agitated patients.....  | 9        |
| 7.3      | Richmond Agitation-Sedation Scale (RASS) .....             | 11       |
| 7.4      | Severe behavioural disturbance in paediatric patients..... | 13       |
| <b>8</b> | <b>MISCELLANEOUS .....</b>                                 | <b>1</b> |
| 8.1      | Anaphylaxis .....  | 1        |
| 8.2      | Hyperkalaemia.....   | 3        |
| 8.3      | Hypokalaemia.....  | 4        |
| 8.4      | Shock.....   | 5        |
| 8.5      | Vascular Catastrophes .....                                | 7        |
| 8.6      | Transfusion Medicine .....                                 | 9        |
| 8.7      | Major Haemorrhage .....                                    | 13       |
| 8.8      | Reversal of Anticoagulation.....                           | 15       |
| 8.9      | Mass Casualty Incidents .....                              | 18       |
| 8.10     | Morbid Obesity .....                                       | 23       |
| 8.11     | Acute Pain Management .....                                | 26       |
| 8.12     | Diving Related Injury and Illness .....                    | 29       |
| <b>9</b> | <b>NEUROLOGICAL.....</b>                                   | <b>1</b> |
| 9.1      | Status Epilepticus .....                                   | 1        |
| 9.2      | Subarachnoid Haemorrhage .....                             | 5        |
| 9.3      | Delirium Tremens .....                                     | 6        |
| 9.4      | Alcohol Withdrawal.....                                    | 7        |

|           |  |          |
|-----------|--|----------|
| <b>10</b> | <b>OBSTETRIC .....</b>   | <b>1</b> |
| 10.1      | Pre-term Labour and Tocolysis .....                              | 1        |
| 10.2      | Pre-Eclampsia .....  | 4        |
| 10.3      | Eclampsia .....  | 6        |
| 10.4      | Antepartum Haemorrhage .....                                     | 7        |
| 10.5      | Post-Partum Haemorrhage .....                                    | 8        |
| 10.6      | Epidurals In-Flight .....  | 10       |
| 10.7      | Obstetric Trauma .....   | 11       |
| <b>11</b> | <b>PAEDIATRICS .....</b>   | <b>1</b> |
| 11.1      | Paediatric Upper Airway Obstruction .....                        | 1        |
| 11.2      | Paediatric Maintenance Fluids .....                              | 3        |
| 11.3      | Gastroenteritis/Dehydration In Children .....                    | 4        |
| 11.4      | Neonate Retrievals .....   | 6        |
| 11.5      | Intranasal Fentanyl .....  | 8        |
| <b>12</b> | <b>RESPIRATORY .....</b>   | <b>1</b> |
| 12.1      | Pulmonary Embolism .....   | 1        |
| 12.2      | Acute Asthma .....   | 3        |
| 12.3      | Bronchiolitis .....  | 5        |
| <b>13</b> | <b>TOXICOLOGY .....</b>  | <b>1</b> |
| 13.1      | Snakebite .....  | 1        |
| 13.2      | Red-back Spider Bite (RBSB) .....                                | 4        |
| 13.3      | Irukandji Syndrome .....   | 6        |
| 13.4      | An Approach To Poisoning .....                                   | 8        |
| 13.5      | Paraquat Poisoning .....   | 9        |
| 13.6      | Serotonin Syndrome .....   | 11       |
| 13.7      | Cyanide Poisoning .....  | 12       |
| <b>14</b> | <b>TRAUMA .....</b>  | <b>1</b> |
| 14.1      | Burns .....  | 1        |
| 14.2      | Hydrofluoric Acid Burns .....                                    | 5        |
| 14.3      | Identification and Management of Pelvic Fractures .....          | 6        |
| 14.4      | Crush Syndrome .....   | 8        |
| 14.5      | Compartment Syndrome .....                                       | 9        |
| 14.6      | Fractured Neck of Femur .....                                    | 11       |
| 14.7      | Screening Adults With Suspected Cervical Spine Fractures .....   | 12       |
| 14.8      | Acute Spinal Cord Injuries .....                                 | 13       |
| 14.9      | Head Injury .....  | 15       |
| <b>15</b> | <b>EMERGENCY ANAESTHESIA AND VENTILATION .....</b>               | <b>1</b> |
| 15.1      | Indications for Intubation .....                                 | 1        |
| 15.2      | Conduct of Rapid Sequence Induction .....                        | 2        |
| 15.3      | Anaesthetic drugs .....  | 7        |
| 15.4      | Difficult intubation .....                                       | 9        |
| 15.5      | Modification of RSI for special circumstances .....              | 12       |
| 15.6      | Packaging and Ongoing Management of the Ventilated Patient. .... | 14       |
| 15.7      | Ventilation Strategies .....                                     | 18       |
| 15.8      | Paediatric Considerations .....                                  | 22       |
| 15.9      | Paediatric Leak Attachment .....                                 | 26       |
| 15.10     | Non-invasive Ventilation .....                                   | 27       |
| 15.11     | High Flow Nasal Cannula Therapy .....                            | 31       |
| <b>16</b> | <b>OCCUPATIONAL &amp; ADMINISTRATIVE .....</b>                   | <b>1</b> |
| 16.1      | Occupational Exposure to Blood and Bodily Fluids .....           | 1        |
| 16.2      | Deceased Patients .....  | 5        |



## Introduction

### *Purpose of the Manual*

This manual is an aid to the clinical management and aeromedical transport of patients by RFDS Western Operations (RFDSWO). It has been developed as a multi-disciplinary document for the use of all RFDSWO Retrieval Doctors and Flight Nurses.

### *Structure*

The manual is divided into five parts, each of which contains reference material which may be of use before or during flight. It is not intended as a comprehensive coverage of all topics but as a ready reference for doctors and nurses when access to more detailed references may not be available. The parts are as follows:

- Part 1 Clinical Guidelines
- Part 2 Drug Infusion Guidelines
- Part 3 Procedures
- Part 4 Standard Drug List
- Part 5 Standard Aircraft Minimum Equipment List

### *Part 1 - Clinical Guidelines*

These are guides to the pre-flight and in-flight management of various cases. They are intended to cover conditions not commonly encountered for which specific treatment is required (for example, paraquat poisoning), as well as common problems for which we have developed standard guidelines for management (for example, preterm labour). Definitive management of patients always remains the responsibility of the appropriate RFDSWO Doctor.

On occasions Flight Nurses may encounter unexpected medical problems. Advice should always be sought from an RFDSWO doctor by telephone or aircraft radio. However, in the event that communication is not possible, these clinical guidelines should be used. Flight Nurses must always practise within the scope of RFDSWO Flight Nurse Competency Standards and RFDSWO Nursing Practice Standards. Emergency actions in accordance with these clinical guidelines that are within the scope of the individual's medical or nursing practice, will be endorsed by the Director of Medical Services and the Director of Nursing and Primary Health Care.

### *Part 2 - Drug Infusion Guidelines*

This section provides information on commonly used drug infusions. The particulars of preparation are appropriate to the range and volumes of drugs and intravenous fluids carried on our aircraft. Infusions cover those settings which do not have syringe drivers but only volumetric pumps. Simple tables minimise the calculations required in flight. Further information related to Drug Infusion Guidelines can be found in the Introduction to that section.

### *Part 3 - Procedures*

This part contains brief notes and guidelines for procedures that may need to be carried out by RFDS Doctors or Flight Nurses. These guidelines are aimed to provide brief, practical advice on procedures and do not preclude variations based on the individual practitioner's experience and assessment of the case. Flight Nurses are authorised to carry out procedures that are identified in the RFDSWO Flight Nurse Competency Standards.

### *Part 4 – Standard Drug List*

This part outlines the minimum standard drugs which should be available for any patient transport flight conducted by RFDS Western Operations. The list covers the most common emergency and routine drugs and the minimum quantities required for flights from any region of the State. The list is a balance between coverage of a diverse range of potential clinical needs and the provision of

an excessive choice of agents. Additional drugs or extra quantities of drugs may be carried for specific cases.

## ***Part 5 – Standard Aircraft Equipment List***

This section lists the minimum equipment on each aircraft, irrespective of the different storage options and configuration of different aircraft types.

### ***Updates***

The manual is distributed to all RFDS Flight Nurses and Medical Officers with additional reference copies kept at each Base. Printed copies are controlled documents. Electronic versions are also available on the RFDS national website and the Western Operations intranet. Other electronic versions may be made available.

Updates and new guidelines will be provided at intervals. With each set of update pages, a new Table of Contents will be provided indicating the appropriate contents. The manual is a dynamic document with continuing additions and revisions.

### ***Validity***

Pages in this document will remain valid indefinitely unless otherwise updated or deleted.

### ***Errors and Modifications***

Despite our best efforts, typographical and other errors can occur. Clinical staff are requested to notify the Director of Medical Services of any errors noted so that they may be rectified.

The manual is by nature a dynamic document and needs to be constantly reviewed in light of changing clinical practice. Staff are encouraged to submit suggested additions, deletions, or modifications to the Director of Medical Services. The manual and its contents are reviewed on an ongoing basis by the Medical Advisory Committee.

### ***Disclaimer***

These notes are issued as a guide only. Whilst all care is taken to ensure they are accurate and complete, reference should be made to standard textbooks of treatment or to the manufacturer's written drug or equipment information, where any discrepancy exists.

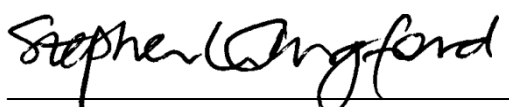
This manual has been prepared solely for the use of RFDSWO personnel and RFDSWO takes no responsibility for the consequences of any use (authorised or unauthorised) by other persons. This manual remains the property of RFDSWO and should not be copied or distributed without the consent of the Director of Medical Services.

### ***Reference***

This manual has been compiled using the principles outlined in the publication 'A guide to the development, implementation and evaluation of clinical practice guidelines' published by the NHMRC, 1999.

### ***Acknowledgement***

This manual has had multiple contributors. However I wish to particularly acknowledge the considerable work by Dr Angela O'Connell in compiling and editing the contents of Version 7 of the Clinical Guidelines.



Director of Medical Services

1 July 2015

Date

## Abbreviations and Units of Measure

Use of abbreviations has been minimized wherever possible. However the following standard clinical abbreviations and units of measure are used.

### Units of Measure

|    |                     |       |                      |
|----|---------------------|-------|----------------------|
| mL | millilitres         | mEq   | milliEquivalents     |
| L  | Litres              | IU    | International Units  |
| mg | milligrams          | mmol  | millimoles           |
| µg | micrograms (or mcg) | min   | minute               |
| g  | grams               | hr    | hour                 |
| kg | kilograms           | J     | Joules               |
| mm | millimetres         | 1%    | 1 g per 100mL        |
| cm | centimetres         | g/L   | grams per Litre      |
| km | kilometres          | mL/hr | millilitres per hour |

### Clinical Terminology

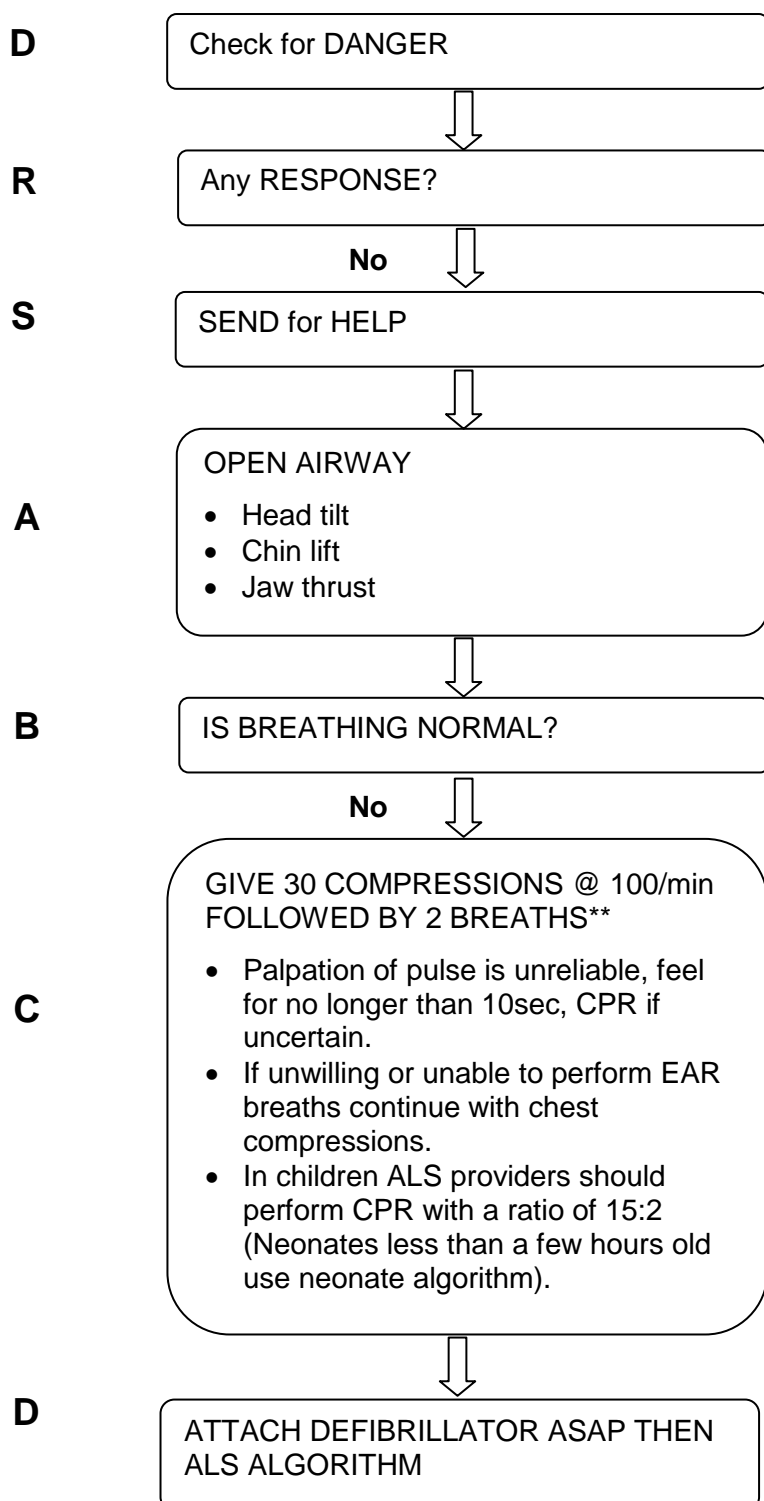
|                  |   |                   |  |
|------------------|---|-------------------|--|
| AAA              | Abdominal aortic aneurysm                 | CPR               | Cardiopulmonary resuscitation                  |
| ABG              | Arterial blood gas                        | CSF               | Cerebrospinal fluid                            |
| ACEI             | Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor   | CSL               | Compound sodium lactate                        |
| ACR              | Albumin creatinine ratio                  | CT                | Computerised tomogram                          |
| ACS              | Acute coronary syndrome                   | CTG               | Cardiotachography                              |
| AF               | Atrial fibrillation                       | CTPA              | Computerised tomography pulmonary angiogram    |
| AFB              | Acid fast bacilli                         | CVA               | Cerebrovascular accident                       |
| ALS              | Advanced life support                     | CVC               | Central venous catheter                        |
| APH              | Antipartum haemorrhage                    | CVP               | Central venous pressure                        |
| APO              | Acute pulmonary oedema                    | CXR               | Chest x-ray                                    |
| ARCBS            | Australian Red Cross Blood Service        | DBP               | Diastolic blood pressure                       |
| ARDS             | Adult respiratory distress syndrome       | DC                | Direct current                                 |
| ATLS             | Advanced trauma life support              | DIC               | Disseminated intravascular coagulopathy        |
| BBB              | Bundle branch block                       | DKA               | Diabetic keto-acidosis                         |
| BP               | Blood pressure                            | DVT               | Deep vein thrombosis                           |
| Bpm              | Beats per minute                          | EAR               | Expired air resuscitation                      |
| BSL              | Blood sugar level                         | ECG               | Electrocardiogram                              |
| BVM              | Bag valve mask                            | EMST              | Early management of severe trauma              |
| Ca <sup>2+</sup> | Calcium                                   | ENT               | Ear nose and throat                            |
| CAPD             | Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis | ERCP              | Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography |
| CASA             | Civil aviation safety authority           | ETCO <sub>2</sub> | End-tidal CO <sub>2</sub>                      |
| CCP              | Casualty Clearing Post                    | ETT               | Endotracheal tube                              |
| Cf               | Compared with                             | FAB               | Antibody fragment                              |
| CK               | Creatine kinase                           | FBC               | Full blood count                               |
| CNS              | Central nervous system                    | FFP               | Fresh frozen plasma                            |
| CPAP             | Continuous positive airway pressure       | FHR               | Foetal heart rate                              |

|                  |  |                   |  |
|------------------|--|-------------------|--|
| FM               | Foetal movements                                       | MRSA              | Methicillin resistant staphylococcus aureus    |
| GCS              | Glasgow coma score                                     | NGT               | nasogastric tube                               |
| GIT              | Gastrointestinal tract                                 | NIBP              | Non-invasive blood pressure                    |
| GPS              | Global positioning system                              | NIV               | Non invasive ventilation                       |
| GTN              | Glyceryl trinitrate                                    | NM                | Neuromuscular                                  |
| Hb               | Haemoglobin  | NSAIDS            | Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs          |
| Hct              | Haematocrit  | NSTEACS           | Non ST elevation acute coronary syndrome       |
| HELLP            | Haemolysis, Elevated Liver enzymes, Low Platelet count | OT                | Operating theatre                              |
| HFNC             | High Flow Nasal Cannulae                               | PO                | Per oral                                       |
| Hg               | Mercury  | PR                | Per rectum                                     |
| HR               | Heart rate   | PaCO <sub>2</sub> | Partial pressure arterial carbon dioxide       |
| IA               | Intra-arterial   | PaO <sub>2</sub>  | Partial pressure arterial oxygen               |
| IBP              | Invasive blood pressure                                | P <sub>B</sub>    | Barometric pressure                            |
| ICC              | Incident Control Centre                                | PTCA              | Percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty |
| ICP              | Intracranial pressure                                  | PCO <sub>2</sub>  | Partial pressure carbon dioxide                |
| IDC              | Indwelling catheter                                    | PE                | Pulmonary embolism                             |
| IDDM             | Insulin dependent diabetes mellitus                    | PEA               | Pulseless electrical activity                  |
| IM               | Intramuscular  | PEEP              | Positive end expiratory pressure               |
| INR              | International normalised ratio                         | PIB               | Pressure Immobilization Bandage                |
| IO               | Intraosseous   | PO <sub>2</sub>   | Partial pressure oxygen                        |
| IPPV             | Intermittent positive pressure ventilation             | PPE               | Personal protective equipment                  |
| IU               | International units                                    | PPH               | Post partum haemorrhage                        |
| IUGR             | Intrauterine growth retardation                        | PRBC              | Packed red blood cells                         |
| IV               | Intravenous  | PRC               | Packed red cells                               |
| JVP              | Jugular venous pressure                                | PSVT              | Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia        |
| K <sup>+</sup>   | Potassium  | PT                | Prothrombin time                               |
| KCl              | Potassium chloride                                     | PV                | Per vaginum                                    |
| LAD              | Left anterior descending coronary artery               | RBBB              | Right bundle branch block                      |
| LBBB             | Left bundle branch block                               | RR                | Respiratory rate                               |
| LFT              | Liver function tests                                   | RSV               | Respiratory syncytial virus                    |
| LMA              | Laryngeal Mask Airway                                  | RUQ               | Right upper quadrant                           |
| LMWH             | Low Molecular Weight Heparin                           | Rx                | Treatment                                      |
| LVF              | Left ventricular failure                               | SAH               | Subarachnoid haemorrhage                       |
| MAP              | Mean arterial pressure                                 | SaO <sub>2</sub>  | Saturation                                     |
| MC&S             | Microscopy, culture and sensitivity                    | SBP               | Systolic blood pressure                        |
| MCI              | Mass Casualty Incident                                 | SC                | Subcutaneous                                   |
| Mg <sup>2+</sup> | Magnesium  | SHICC             | State Health Incident Control Centre           |
| MI               | Myocardial infarction                                  | SIRS              | Systemic Inflammatory Response Syndrome        |
| MIMMS            | Major Incident Medical Management and Support Course   | SpO <sub>2</sub>  | Oxygen saturation                              |
| MILS             | Manual In Line Stabilisation                           | SROM              | Spontaneous rupture of membranes               |

|      |                                   |
|------|-----------------------------------|
| SVT  | Supraventricular tachycardia      |
| T    | Temperature                       |
| tds  | Three times a day                 |
| U&E  | Urea and electrolytes             |
| UL   | Upper limb                        |
| URTI | Upper respiratory tract infection |
| V/Q  | Ventilation / perfusion           |
| VF   | Ventricular fibrillation          |
| VT   | Ventricular tachycardia           |
| VUJ  | Vesico-ureteric junction          |
| WBCT | Whole Blood Clotting time         |
| XR   | X-ray                             |

# 1 LIFE SUPPORT

## 1.1 Basic Life Support Flow Chart



\*\* Continue CPR until return of responsiveness or normal breathing. Change rescuers every 2min to avoid fatigue.

Figure 1. Basic Life Support Flow Chart

## 1.2 Newborn Life Support Flow Chart

If more than a few hours old use paediatric algorithm.

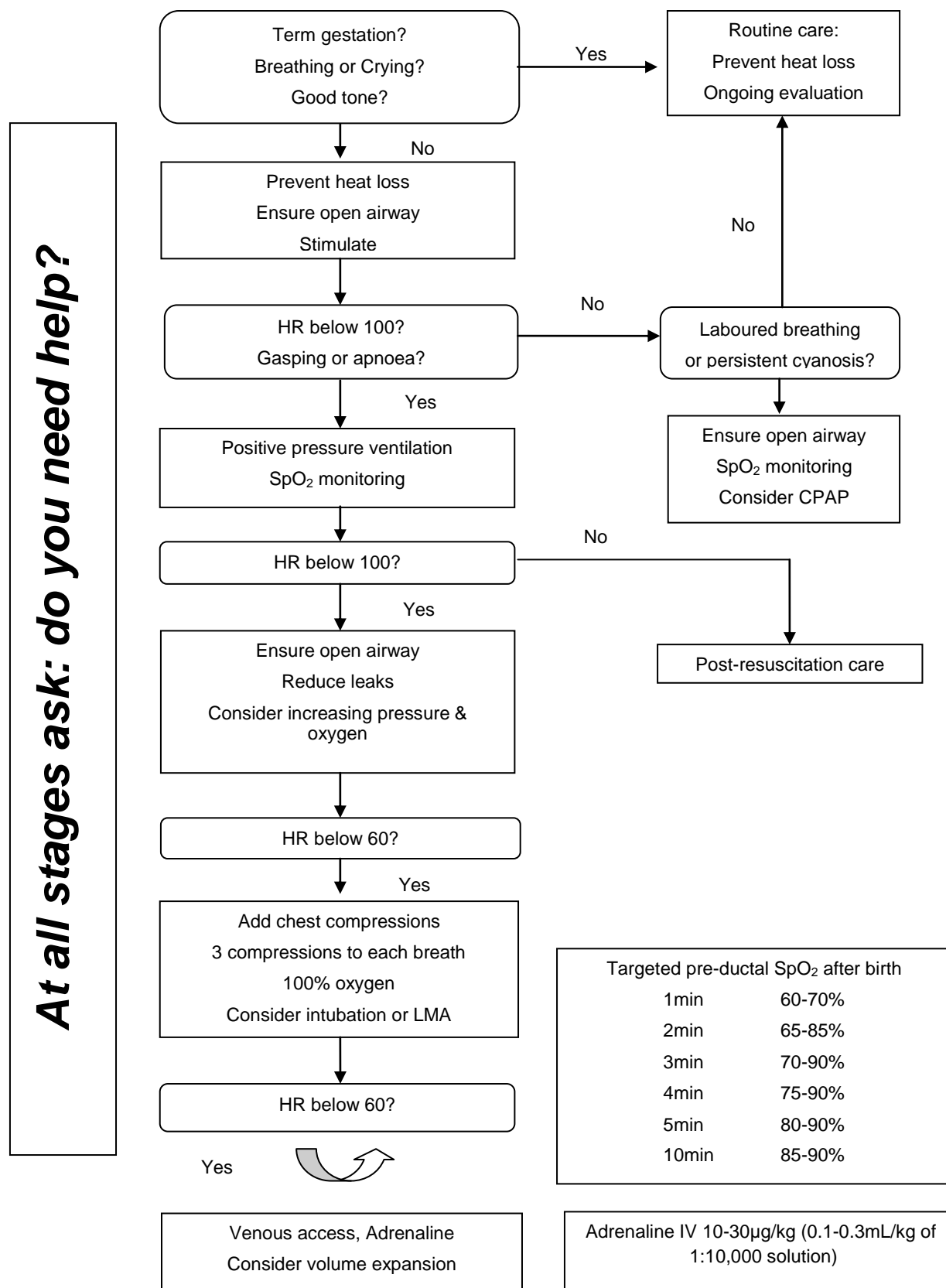
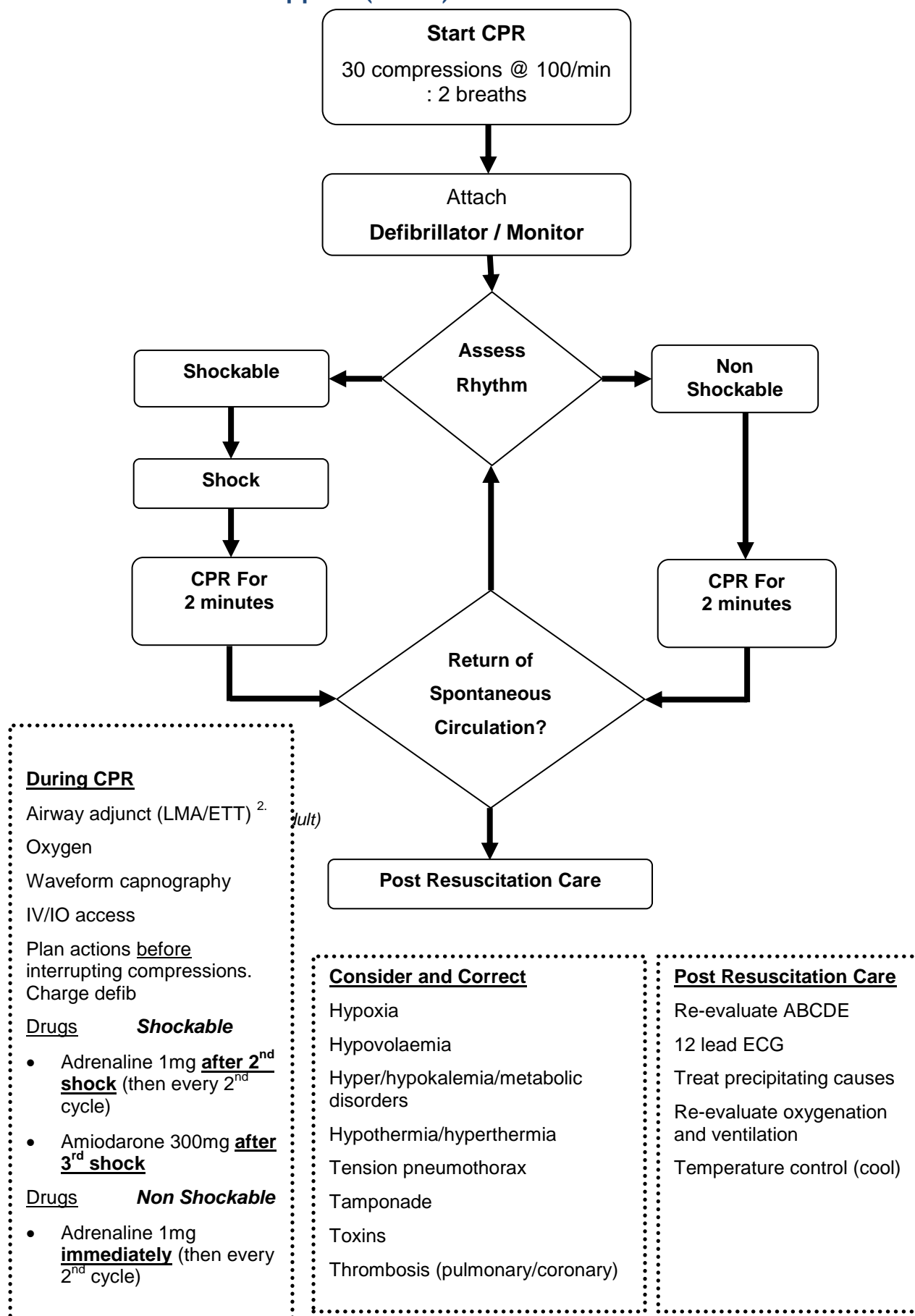


Figure 2. Newborn Life Support Flow Chart

### 1.3 Advanced Life Support (Adult)



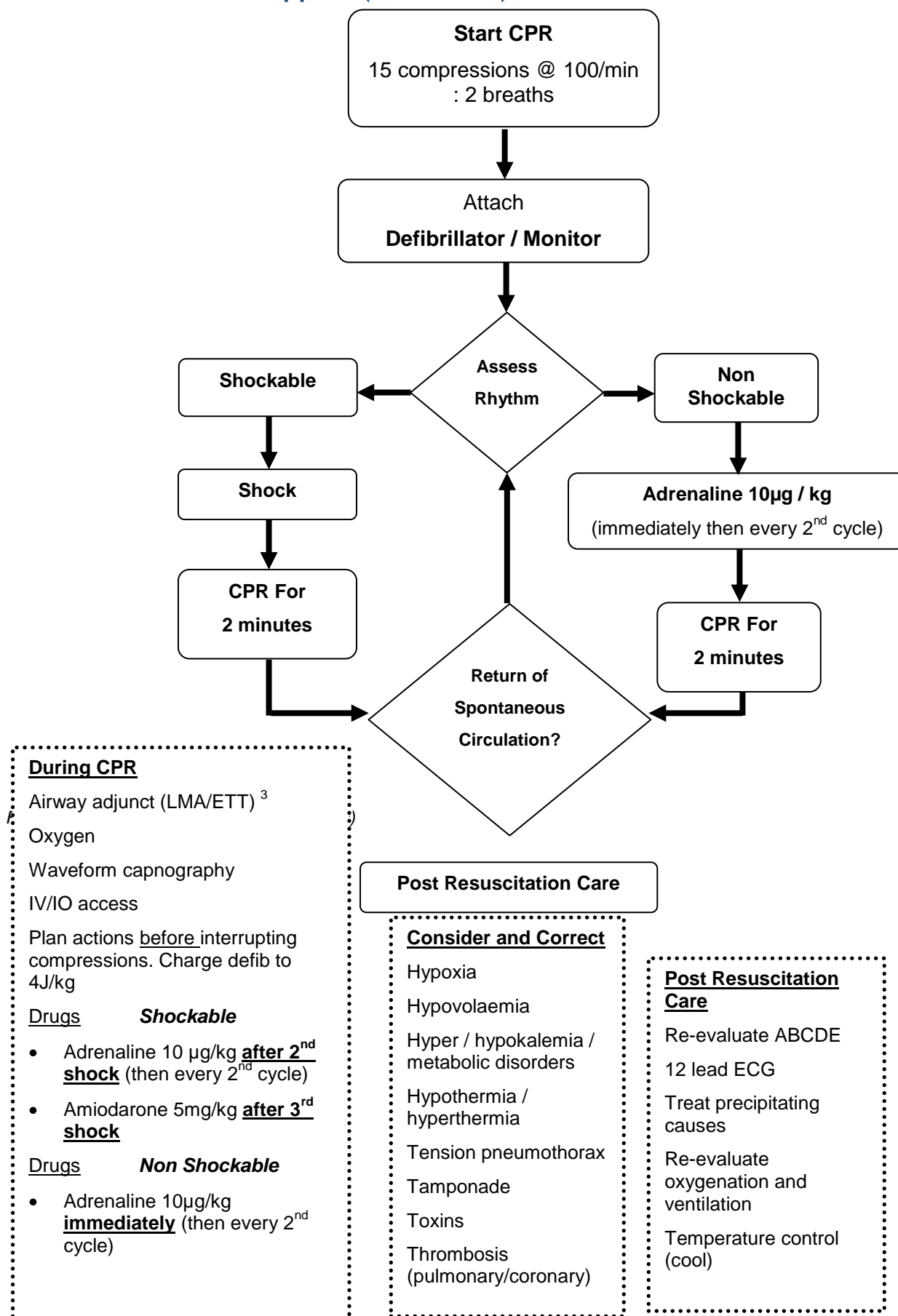


## Advanced Life Support (Adult) - Cont.

### Notes

1. Good quality CPR with minimal interruptions essential. Return to CPR immediately after delivering a shock unless signs of life (breathing / moving), do not waste time checking rhythm or for a pulse.
2. Advanced airways (ETT, LMA) not required if successful BVM ventilation, if in place commence continuous chest compressions with no interruptions for ventilation (i.e. asynchronous ventilation). Securing advanced airway must not result in significant interruption to chest compressions and may be deferred to post resuscitation care.
3.  $\text{ETCO}_2 \leq 20\text{mm Hg}$  implies inadequate CPR or excessive ventilation.
4. Continue CPR whilst charging machine, charge as approaching end of 2 min cycle, stand clear only whilst shock is delivered.
5. Rhythm checks at two minutely intervals, if rhythm compatible with spontaneous circulation then check pulse.
6. Shockable rhythms are ventricular fibrillation and pulseless ventricular tachycardia.
7. Single shocks only, to be delivered (no stacked shocks). No precordial thump.
8. Energy levels; Monophasic 360J, Biphasic (use manufacturer's default either 150 or 200J). Note All RFDS defibrillators are biphasic.
9. Best evidence is for uninterrupted CPR and early defibrillation, other interventions including drugs of less proven value.
10. There is no evidence for routinely giving buffers, atropine, calcium and magnesium in cardiac arrest. These drugs may be considered when treating potentially reversible causes of cardiac arrest.
  - a)  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (20mL of 10% calcium gluconate or 10mL of 10% calcium chloride) for hyperkalemia, hypocalcaemia, calcium channel blocker overdose.
  - b)  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  (5mmol) for torsades de pointes, refractory VT / VF, hypokalemia, hypomagnesaemia.
  - c) Sodium bicarbonate for tricyclic overdose, hyperkalemia.
  - d)  $\text{K}^+$  (5mmol) for hypokalemia (in addition to giving  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ ).

## 1.4 Advanced Life Support (Paediatric)



## Advanced Life Support (Paediatric) - Cont.

### Notes

1. Good quality CPR with minimal interruptions essential. Return to CPR immediately after delivering a shock unless signs of life (breathing / moving), do not waste time checking rhythm or for a pulse. Note, different ratio of compressions to ventilations reflects importance of hypoxia as cause of arrest.
2. Most paediatric arrests are asystole or PEA (pulseless electrical activity) secondary to hypoxia and hypovolaemia.
3. Advanced airways (ETT, LMA) not required if successful BVM ventilation, if in place commence continuous chest compressions with no interruptions for ventilation (i.e. asynchronous ventilation). Securing advanced airway must not result in significant interruption to chest compressions and may be deferred to post resuscitation care.
4.  $\text{ETCO}_2 \leq 20\text{mmHg}$  implies either inadequate CPR or excessive ventilation.
5. Continue CPR whilst charging machine, charge as approaching end of 2 min cycle, stand clear only whilst shock is delivered.
6. Rhythm checks at two minutely intervals, if rhythm compatible with spontaneous circulation then check pulse.
7. Shockable rhythms are ventricular fibrillation and pulseless ventricular tachycardia.
8. Single shocks only, to be delivered (no stacked shocks). No precordial thump.
9. Energy levels; Monophasic 4J/kg, Biphasic 4J/kg. Note All RFDS defibrillators are biphasic.
10. Best evidence is for uninterrupted CPR and early defibrillation, other interventions including drugs of less proven value.
11. There is no evidence for routinely giving buffers, atropine, calcium and magnesium in cardiac arrest. These drugs may be considered when treating potentially reversible causes of cardiac arrest.
  - i.  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (0.5mL/kg (max 20mL) of 10% calcium gluconate or 0.2mL/kg of 10% calcium chloride) for hyperkalemia, hypocalcaemia, calcium channel blocker overdose.
  - ii.  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$  (0.1-0.2mmol/kg) for torsades de pointes, refractory VT / VF, hypokalemia, hypomagnesaemia.
  - iii. Sodium bicarbonate (1mmol/kg for tricyclic overdose, hyperkalemia.
  - iv.  $\text{K}^+$  (0.1-0.2mmol/kg) for hypokalemia (in addition to giving  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ ).
12. Neonates less than a few hours old refer to [Newborn Life Support Flow Chart](#)

## 1.5 The Deteriorating Patient

### Theory

At all times during the patient transport, from pre-flight assessment to handover of the patient at the receiving end it is important to recognise and act appropriately to signs of deterioration in the patient. This may sound like stating the obvious but a clearly defined action plan needs to be pre-determined for such events and staff need the confidence and support to be able to action such a plan.

For our purposes deterioration may either be physiological or behavioural, in either case an escalation of care may be required. Predictors of deterioration may be evident from the time of the pre-flight assessment, become evident whilst the patient is awaiting transport or during transport. The timing of deterioration will to a certain extent determine what actions may be required.

### Physiological predictors of deterioration

In the remote and rural retrieval setting we are heavily reliant on simple parameters and clinical acumen to determine risk of deterioration, many of these parameters also form the basis of the more complex scoring systems. The measures available to us are more closely aligned to MET call or EWS scores and indeed less well resourced locations would have retrieval of the patient as part of their escalation process.

With this in mind the following limits are reminders of what may require an escalation in care.

Table 1. Physiological Predictors of Deterioration

|  | <3 months  | 4-12 months  | 1-4 years  | 5-12 years   | 12 years-Adult   | Adult  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| <b>Nurse or Doctor Worried</b>                         | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| <b>Airway threat</b>                                   | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| <b>Hypoxaemia</b>                                      | SpO <sub>2</sub> < 90%   | SpO <sub>2</sub> < 90%   | SpO <sub>2</sub> < 90%   | SpO <sub>2</sub> < 90%   | SpO <sub>2</sub> < 90%   | SpO <sub>2</sub> < 90%   |
| <b>Respiratory distress, apnoea, cyanosis</b>          | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  | ✓  |
| <b>Respiratory rate</b>                                | >60<br><25   | >50<br><25   | >40<br><10   | >30<br><5  | >30<br><5  | >30<br><5  |
| <b>Heart rate</b>                                      | <100<br>>180   | <100<br>>180   | <90<br>>160  | <80<br>>140  | <60<br>>130  | <40<br>>130  |
| <b>Hypotension</b>                                     | SBP <50  | SBP <60  | SBP <70  | SBP < 80   | SBP <90  | SBP < 90   |
| <b>Acute change in neurological status, convulsion</b> | Sudden fall in level of consciousness, GCS drop >2 points.<br><br>Repeated or extended seizures, or 1 <sup>st</sup> seizure. | Sudden fall in level of consciousness, GCS drop >2 points.<br><br>Repeated or extended seizures, or 1 <sup>st</sup> seizure. | Sudden fall in level of consciousness, GCS drop >2 points.<br><br>Repeated or extended seizures, or 1 <sup>st</sup> seizure. | Sudden fall in level of consciousness, GCS drop >2 points.<br><br>Repeated or extended seizures, or 1 <sup>st</sup> seizure. | Sudden fall in level of consciousness, GCS drop >2 points.<br><br>Repeated or extended seizures, or 1 <sup>st</sup> seizure. | Sudden fall in level of consciousness, GCS drop >2 points.<br><br>Repeated or extended seizures, or 1 <sup>st</sup> seizure. |

Escalation of care may comprise any or a number of the following actions:

1. Increase in priority of flight.
2. Doctor accompaniment.
3. Seeking additional orders, from RFDS doctor or clinical coordinator.
4. Diverting in flight for a higher level of assistance or resources (eg. To collect an RFDS doctor, or transfer patient to regional hospital emergency department, acquiring additional supplies like blood products.) Diversions ideally should be facilitated by the clinical coordinator.
5. Additional recommendations regarding pre-flight stabilisation (eg. Intubation, commencement of inotrope or other therapies.)
6. Planning to go in to a facility to stabilise a patient rather than have them brought out to the airport.
7. Planning a different destination for the patient (eg. An ICU bed)
8. Requesting a lights and sirens ambulance escort.

### **Predictors of Behavioural Disturbance**

In-flight violence or behavioural disturbance is clearly a safety issue made all the more acute by the uncontrolled environment in which we work. Every effort must be made to ensure the right personnel and armamentarium of chemical and physical restraint is available where required.

Behavioural disturbance may occur for psychiatric, organic and criminal reason. Whatever the cause, the pilot has an obligation to ensure the safety of the aircraft and is legally entitled to request restraint of a patient or passenger where required, medical authorisation for this restraint is not a pre-requisite rather an aviation safety duty of care if directed by the pilot. Patients referred under the Mental Health Act (1996) will generally have medical authorisation for physical restraint in-flight.

Warning signs:

- Facial and body language, suggesting anger and restlessness.
- Physiological evidence of over-arousal (tachycardia, tachypnoea, muscle twitching, dilated pupils)
- Increase volume of speech
- Abnormal eye contact, refusal to communicate, fear, irritability
- Unclear thought processes, poor concentration
- Delusions and hallucinations with violent content, focussed on a particular person or command hallucinations
- Overt hostility or suspiciousness
- Verbal threats or gestures
- Behaviour similar to that which preceded previous violent episodes
- Reporting feeling anger or violent feelings

Risk factors:

- History of violent behaviour
- Alcohol or drug abuse
- Reports of violence from carers

- Expression of intent to harm
- Social rootlessness
- Previous use of weapons
- Previous dangerous impulsive acts
- Denial of previous dangerous acts
- Known personal trigger factors
- Evidence of severe recent stress
- Poor compliance with treatment
- Antisocial, explosive or impulsive personality traits or personality disorders

In addition patients suffering delirium and dementia in particular may be worsened by unfamiliar environment and night-time conditions.

Escalation of care:

1. Ensure during pre-flight assessment that adequate history for warning signs and risk factors taken.
2. Ensure adequate pre-flight sedation including adequate antipsychotics for patients suffering from psychotic illness.
3. Doctor accompaniment
4. Additional escorts (eg police, cooperative relative)
5. Use of physical restraints
6. Ensure basic needs attended to ie nutrition, hydration, toileting.
7. Observe for and treat drug, alcohol and nicotine withdrawal

**Nursing staff seeking assistance with either physiological or behavioural deterioration:**

- State clearly who and where you are.
- Give a clear and concise background of the patient.
- State clearly what the current problems are, if you have a specific concern, what you believe may be going on and your level of concern. (eg. The patient is violently resisting restraint and threatening to kill me. I am extremely worried for my safety.) (The patient has severe abdominal pain with a heart rate of 140 and systolic blood pressure of 80, I think he is bleeding and I am very worried.)
- State clearly what action you would like to follow (eg. I want orders for sedation, I want the assistance of a doctor on the flight or to review this patient at the airport.)

## References

National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. (2005). Violence: The short-term management of disturbed / violent behaviour in in-patient psychiatric settings and emergency departments. [CG25]. London. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence.

Tibballs J. Criteria for Activation of Medical Emergency Team. Clinical Practice Guidelines. September 2012. Royal Children's Hospital, Melbourne.

Hillman K, Chen J, Cretikos M, Bellomo R, et al. Introduction of the medical emergency team (MET) system: a cluster-randomised controlled trial. The Lancet; Jun18-Jun24, 2005; 365, 9477

Fong N. Medical Emergency Response. Operational Directive OD 0040/07. Feb 2007. Department of Health Government of Western Australia.

## 1.6 Post Resuscitation Care Checklist

### Theory

#### Ventilation

- Target normocarbida. The cerebral vasoconstriction caused by hyperventilation may produce potentially harmful cerebral ischaemia<sup>1</sup>.
- Hyperventilation increases intrathoracic pressure, which will decrease cardiac output both during and after CPR<sup>2</sup>.
- Avoid hypoventilation, hypoxia and hypercarbia could increase ICP or compound metabolic acidosis, which is common shortly after ROSC (Return of spontaneous circulation)<sup>3</sup>.
- Avoid hyperoxia, evidence suggests that hyperoxia during early stages of reperfusion harms post-ischaemic neurons by causing excessive oxidative stress<sup>4</sup>. Ventilation with 100% oxygen for the first hour after ROSC may result in worse neurological outcome compared with immediate adjustment of FiO<sub>2</sub> to produce an arterial oxygen saturation of 94-96%<sup>5</sup>.
- When inducing therapeutic hypothermia, additional blood gases may be helpful to adjust tidal volumes, because cooling will decrease metabolism and the tidal volumes required<sup>3</sup>. Blood gas values can either be corrected for temperature or left uncorrected.

#### Haemodynamic optimisation

- Haemodynamic instability is common after cardiac arrest and manifests as dysrhythmias, hypotension, and low cardiac index<sup>6</sup>. Underlying mechanisms include intravascular volume depletion, impaired vasoregulation, and myocardial dysfunction.
- Dysrhythmias can be treated by maintaining normal electrolyte concentrations and using standard drug and electrical therapies<sup>3</sup>. There is no evidence to support the prophylactic use of anti-arrhythmic drugs after cardiac arrest.
- Dysrhythmias are commonly caused by focal cardiac ischaemia, and early reperfusion treatment is probably the best anti-arrhythmic therapy.
- The first-line intervention for hypotension is to optimize right-heart filling pressures by using intravenous fluids<sup>6</sup>. Inotropes and vasopressors should be considered if haemodynamic goals are not achieved despite optimized preload<sup>3</sup>.

#### Therapeutic hypothermia

- Therapeutic hypothermia should be part of a standardised treatment strategy for comatose survivors of cardiac arrest<sup>3</sup>.
- Induction; with intravenous ice-cold fluids (30 mL/kg of saline 0.9% or Ringer's lactate)<sup>7</sup> or traditional ice packs placed on the groin and armpits and around the neck and head. In most cases it is easy to cool patients initially after ROSC because their temperature normally decreases within the first hour. Initial cooling is facilitated by concomitant neuromuscular blockade with sedation to prevent shivering.
- Complications:
  - Shivering is common, particularly during the induction phase<sup>8</sup>.
  - Increased systemic vascular resistance, which reduces cardiac output.
  - A variety of arrhythmias may be induced by hypothermia, but bradycardia is the most common<sup>9</sup>.
  - Hypothermia induces a diuresis and coexisting hypovolaemia will compound haemodynamic instability. Diuresis may produce electrolyte abnormalities including hypophosphatemia, hypokalaemia, hypomagnesemia and hypocalcemia and these,

in turn, may cause dysrhythmias. The plasma concentrations of these electrolytes should be measured frequently and electrolytes should be replaced to maintain normal values<sup>3</sup>.

- Hypothermia decreases insulin sensitivity and insulin secretion, which results in hyperglycaemia<sup>10</sup>. This should be treated with insulin.
- Effects on platelet and clotting function account for impaired coagulation and increased bleeding.
- Hypothermia can impair the immune system and increase infection rates.
- The clearance of sedative drugs and neuromuscular blockers is reduced by up to 30% at a temperature of 34 °C<sup>11</sup>.
- Magnesium sulphate, a naturally occurring NMDA receptor antagonist, reduces shivering thresholds and can be given to reduce shivering during cooling<sup>12</sup>. Magnesium is also a vasodilator, and therefore increases cooling rates<sup>13</sup>. It has anti-arrhythmic properties, and there are some animal data indication magnesium provides added neuroprotection in combination with hypothermia<sup>14</sup>.

Despite new data indicating there may be little added benefit from cooling to 33 degrees as opposed to 36 degrees<sup>15</sup>, current guidelines still advocate active cooling. If complications occur at lower temperatures (32-34 degrees), the more conservative end point of 36 degrees should be aimed for<sup>16</sup>.

Pyrexia must be prevented. The risk of poor neurological outcome increases for each degree of body temperature >37°<sup>17</sup>.

### **Control of seizures**

Seizures or myoclonus or both, occur in 5-15% of adult patients who achieve ROSC, and 10-40% of those who remain comatose<sup>18</sup>. No studies directly address the use of prophylactic anticonvulsants drugs after cardiac arrest, but anticonvulsants such as thiopental, phenytoin, propofol and benzodiazepines all have a role to play in preventing seizure activity. There is no proven benefit to one over the other. Boluses of neuromuscular blocking agents are preferred over continuous infusions to allow for detection and treatment of seizure activity in the absence of continual EEG monitoring<sup>3</sup>.

### **Treat ACS**

Coronary artery disease is present in the majority of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest (OHCA) patients<sup>19</sup>. In patients resuscitated from OHCA, ECG changes may be difficult to interpret due to both false positive and false negative results. Combined/extended ECG criteria for the selection of patients with likely AMI provided excellent sensitivity (100%), and comprise of ST-elevation and/or depression and/or LBBB and/or non-specific wide QRS and/or RBBB<sup>20</sup>.

### **Glucose control**

Hyperglycaemia is common after cardiac arrest, and should be treated with an insulin infusion. Post-cardiac arrest patients may be treated optimally with a target range of up to 8mmol/L<sup>21</sup>



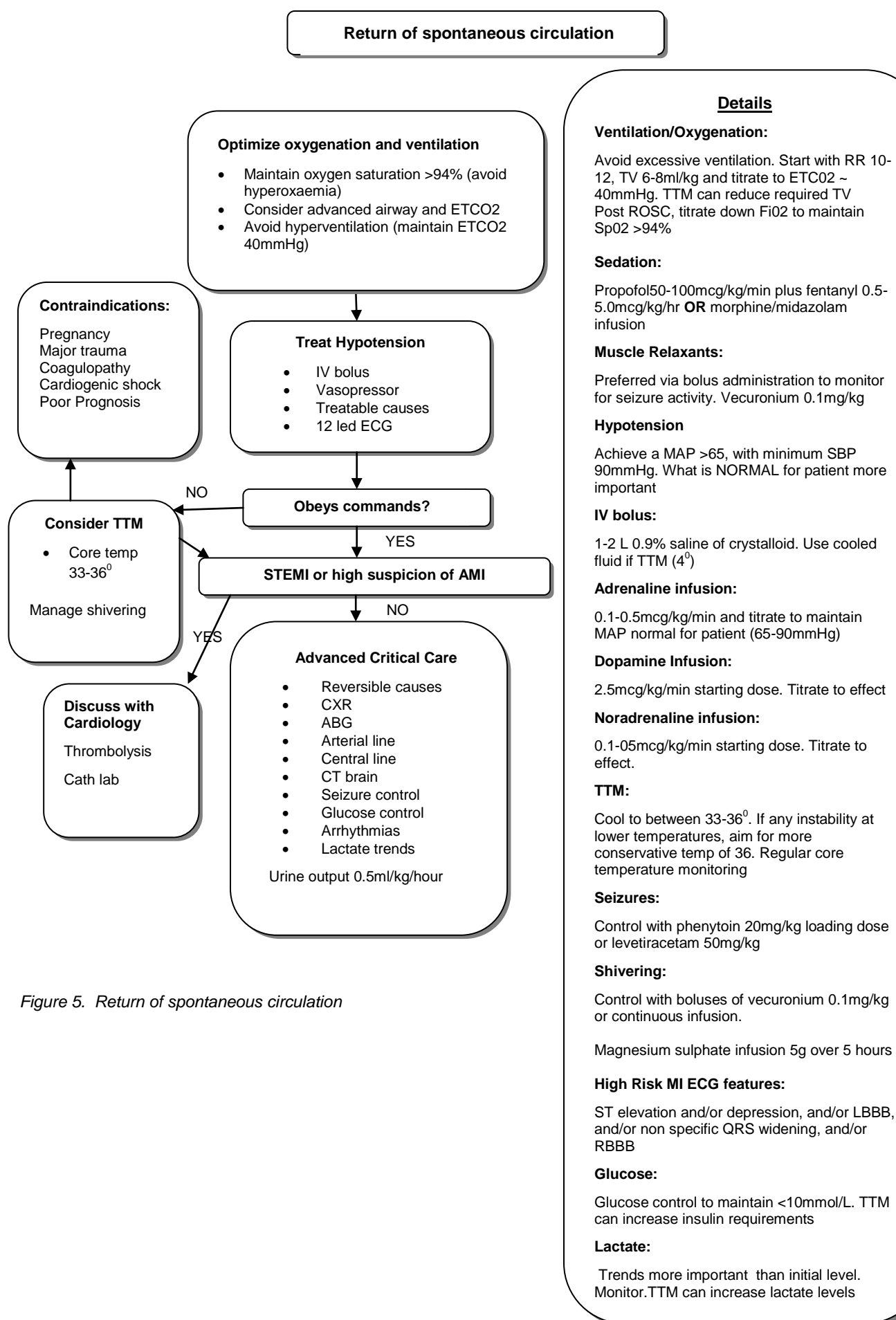


Figure 5. Return of spontaneous circulation

## References:

1. Vereczki V, Martin E, Rosenthal RE et al. Normoxic resuscitation after cardiac arrest protects against hippocampal oxidative stress, metabolic dysfunction and neuronal death. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab* 2006;26:821-35.
2. Aufderheide TP, Sigurdsson G, Pirralo RG et al. Hyperventilation-induced hypotension during cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Circulation* 2004;109:1960-5.
3. Nolan J, Neumar RW, Adrie C et al. Post Cardiac arrest syndrome: Epidemiology, pathophysiology, and prognostication. *Resuscitation* 2008;79:350-379.
4. Schaafsma A, de Jong BM, Bams JL, et al. Cerebral perfusion and metabolism in resuscitated patients with severe post-hypoxic encephalopathy. *J Neurol Sci* 2003;210:23-30.
5. Balan IS, Fiskum G, Hazelton J et al. Oximetry-guided re-oxygenation improves neurological outcome after experimental cardiac arrest. *Stroke* 2006;37:3008-13.
6. Laurent I, Monchi M, Chiche JD et al. Reversible myocardial dysfunction in survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2002; 40:2110-6.
7. Kliegel A, Losert H, Sterz F et al. Cold simple intravenous infusions preceding special endovascular cooling for faster induction of mild hypothermia after cardiac arrest – a feasibility study. *Resuscitation* 2005;64:347-51.
8. Mahmood MA, Zweifler RM. Progress in shivering control. *J Neurol Sci* 2007;261:47-54.
9. Holzer M, Mullner M, Sterz F et al. Efficacy and safety of endovascular cooling after cardiac arrest: cohort study and Bayesian approach. *Stroke* 2006;37:1792-7.
10. Bernard SA, Gray TW, Buist MD et al. Treatment of comatose survivors of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest with induced hypothermia. *NEMJ* 2002;346:557-63.
11. Tortorici MA, Kochanek PM, Poloyac SM. Effects of hypothermia on drug disposition, metabolism and response: a focus of hypothermia-mediated alterations on the cytochrome P450 enzyme system. *Crit Care Med* 2007;35:2196-204.
12. Wadhwa A, Sengupta P, Durrani J et al. Magnesium sulphate only slightly reduces the shivering threshold in humans. *Br J Anaesth* 2005;94:756-62.
13. Zweifler RM, Voorhees ME, Mahmood MA, Parnell M. Magnesium sulphate increases the rate of hypothermia via surface cooling and improves comfort. *Stroke* 2004; 35:2331-4.
14. Zhu H, Meloni BP, Moore SR et al. Intravenous administration of magnesium is only neuroprotective following transient global ischaemia when present with post-ischaemic mild hypothermia. *Brain Res* 2004;1014:53-60.
15. Nielsen N, Wetterslev J et al. Targeted temperature management at 33°C versus 36°C after cardiac arrest. *NEJM* 2013;369:2197-2206.
16. Reference
17. Takasu A, Saitoh D et al. Hyperthermia: is it an ominous sign after cardiac arrest? *Resuscitation* 2001;49:273-7.
18. Krumholz A, Stern BJ, Weiss HD. Outcome from coma after cardiopulmonary resuscitation: relation to seizures and myoclonus. *Neurology* 1988;38:401-5.
19. Pell JP, Sirel JM, Marsden AK et al. Presentation, management, and outcome of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: comparison by underlying aetiology. *Heart* 2003;89:839-42.
20. Sideris G, Voicu S, Dillinger JG et al. Value of post-resuscitation electrocardiogram in the diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction in out-of-hospital cardiac arrest patients. *Resuscitation* 2011;82:1148-1153.
21. Sunde K, Pytte M, Jacobsen D et al. Implementation of a standard treatment protocol for post resuscitation care after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Resuscitation* 2007;73:29-39.

## 2 CARDIOVASCULAR

### 2.1 Acute Coronary Syndromes

#### Theory

1. Acute Coronary Syndromes (ACS) cover a broad spectrum of acute presentations of ischaemic heart disease. This guideline covers the management of both ST Elevation Myocardial Infarction (STEMI) and Non-ST Elevation Acute Coronary Syndromes (NSTEMI).
2. ACS place a significant burden on health services and retrieval systems. Accurate diagnosis and consistency in management strategies are vital to appropriate use and equitable distribution of limited resources.
3. The diagnosis is based on history, 12 lead ECG findings and for NSTEMI, a serum Troponin.

#### STEMI

Consistent history plus any of the following:

- Persistent ST elevation  $\geq 1\text{mm}$  in 2 contiguous limb leads
- Persistent ST elevation  $\geq 2\text{mm}$  in 2 contiguous chest leads
- New left bundle branch block (LBBB)
- Changes consistent with posterior infarct (tall R in V1, deep anterior ST depression, ST elevation in V4 R)
- ECG changes of right ventricular infarct (ST elevation in leads aVR and V4R)

#### NSTEMI

Consistent history without ECG changes consistent with STEMI, plus positive troponin and positive creatine kinase (CK).

#### Angina

- High Risk, (positive troponin but negative CK)
  - Intermediate Risk, (needing further stratification after 8 hour troponin)
  - Low risk, negative troponin at 8 hours plus normal ECG.
4. Diagnosing a STEMI as soon as possible is vital, as reperfusion therapies must be given promptly to reduce morbidity and mortality. In the setting of a suggestive history, ECGs may need to be repeated at 10-15 minute intervals to diagnose an evolving STEMI.
  5. Other ECG changes suggesting extreme risk include:
    - a) *Total occlusion of left main coronary artery*
      - i. ECG
        - ST elevation in aVR  $\pm$  aVL
        - Lesser ST elevation in V1
        - Marked ST depression in inferior leads  $\pm$  left anterior fascicular block
      - ii. May present with cardiogenic shock, significant ventricular arrhythmias or cardiac arrest
      - iii. Very high mortality rate
    - b) *Total occlusion of proximal left anterior descending coronary artery (LAD) (Wellen's Syndrome)*
      - ECG – prominent T wave inversion in V1-V6. (mostly V1-V4)

These patients require URGENT percutaneous coronary angioplasty (PTCA) as they have a >60-70% mortality.

### ***Pre-flight and In-flight Management***

1. During the pre-flight assessment establish an accurate diagnosis.
  - View the 12 lead ECG yourself (faxed or scanned and emailed).
  - Provide assistance with making the diagnosis and instituting management. (It is expected that the assessing doctor takes responsibility for guiding management where the referring practitioner is uncertain).
  - Understand the plan for this patient and the rationale behind it. (Does this patient really need an urgent procedure or is the issue more one of convenience? Are they holding the catheter lab open for this patient, or not intending to do anything until tomorrow?).
2. Establish first line therapy for all ACS.
  - Aspirin loading dose 300mg orally (Medical Chest Item 62).
  - Glyceryl trinitrate (GTN) spray sublingual, titrated to pain and blood pressure (Medical Chest Item 190), may need patch or infusion.
  - Morphine titrated IV (2mg aliquots) or if unable to gain IV access then IM 5-10mg. (Medical Chest Item 188).
  - O<sub>2</sub> to maintain normoxia or correct altitude hypoxia.
  - Clopidogrel 300mg loading dose.
  - Heparin infusion (5000 units loading dose followed by 1000 units per hour) or enoxaparin loading dose 1mg per kg subcutaneously. Use heparin if PTCA planned that day.
  - $\beta$ - blocker if no contra-indications: atenolol 2.5mg-10mg IV OR 25-100mg orally. Alternatively metoprolol 5mg-15mg IV OR 25-100mg orally. Titrate to HR of 55-60bpm.
  - Correct electrolyte abnormalities that may predispose to arrhythmia (K<sup>+</sup> and Mg<sup>2+</sup> )
  - Maintain glycaemic control.
  - Consider a statin and an angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor (ACEI).
  - Glycoprotein IIb / IIIa inhibitors (tirofiban) should be avoided after thrombolysis and should only be given with cardiologist advice (not widely available).
3. Reperfusion therapy.
  - STEMI should be diagnosed early and reperfusion commenced as soon as possible provided no contraindications.
  - In practice no patients outside the metropolitan area are able to access PTCA in an appropriate time frame leaving thrombolysis the treatment of choice. Exceptions might exist for Rottnest Island and some inner rural locations where activation of an RFDS / SJA team on the FESA helicopter may be possible for a direct door to door transfer. The clinical coordinator in the RFDS Coordination Centre is best placed to judge the feasibility of this.
  - Second generation thrombolytics (tenecteplase or reteplase) are the agents of choice.
  - Verbal consent should be obtained from patients and this recorded.

## Tenecteplase Dosage

Table 2. Tenecteplase Dosage

| Patient weight (kg) | Tenecteplase (IU) | Tenecteplase (mg) | Volume of reconstituted solution (mL) |
|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <60                 | 6,000             | 30                | 6                                     |
| 60 to <70           | 7,000             | 35                | 7                                     |
| 70 to <80           | 8,000             | 40                | 8                                     |
| 80 to <90           | 9,000             | 45                | 9                                     |
| >90                 | 10,000            | 50                | 10                                    |

**Reteplase** is given as 10 units intravenously, followed by 10 units after 30 minutes.

**Streptokinase** is rarely used these days and is unsuitable for indigenous patients who carry high streptococcal antibody levels if it is used as a last resort the dose is 1.5 million units given over 60 minutes.

## Contraindications to thrombolysis

Table 3. Contraindications to thrombolysis

| Absolute Contraindications   | Relative Contraindications  |
|--|---|
| <b>Risk of Bleeding</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Active bleeding or bleeding diathesis (excluding menses)</li> <li>Significant closed head or facial trauma within 3 months</li> <li>Suspected aortic dissection</li> </ul>  | <b>Risk of Bleeding</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current use of anticoagulants: the higher the INR the higher the risk of bleeding</li> <li>Non-compressible vascular punctures</li> <li>Recent major surgery (&lt; 3weeks)</li> <li>Traumatic or prolonged (&gt;10min) CPR</li> <li>Recent (within 4 weeks) internal bleeding (e.g. gastro-intestinal or urinary)</li> <li>Active peptic ulcer</li> <li>Pregnancy</li> </ul> |
| <b>Risk of intracranial haemorrhage</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Any prior intracranial haemorrhage</li> <li>Ischaemic stroke within 3 months</li> <li>Known structural cerebral vascular lesion</li> <li>Known malignant intracranial neoplasm (primary or metastatic)</li> </ul> | <b>Risk of intracranial haemorrhage</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>History of chronic, severe, poorly controlled hypertension</li> <li>Severe uncontrolled hypertension on presentation (&gt;180mmHg SBP or &gt;110mmHg DBP)</li> <li>Ischaemic stroke more than 3 months ago, dementia, or known intracranial abnormality not covered in contraindications</li> </ul>  |

## Failure to reperfuse

Successful reperfusion is suggested by:

- Patient is pain free
- Haemodynamically stable
- Cessation of arrhythmias
- Reduction of  $\geq 50\%$  of maximum ST elevation by 60-90 minutes. Failure to reperfuse should result in a priority1 *transfer for rescue* angioplasty. (See Disposition).

## 4. Crew Mix

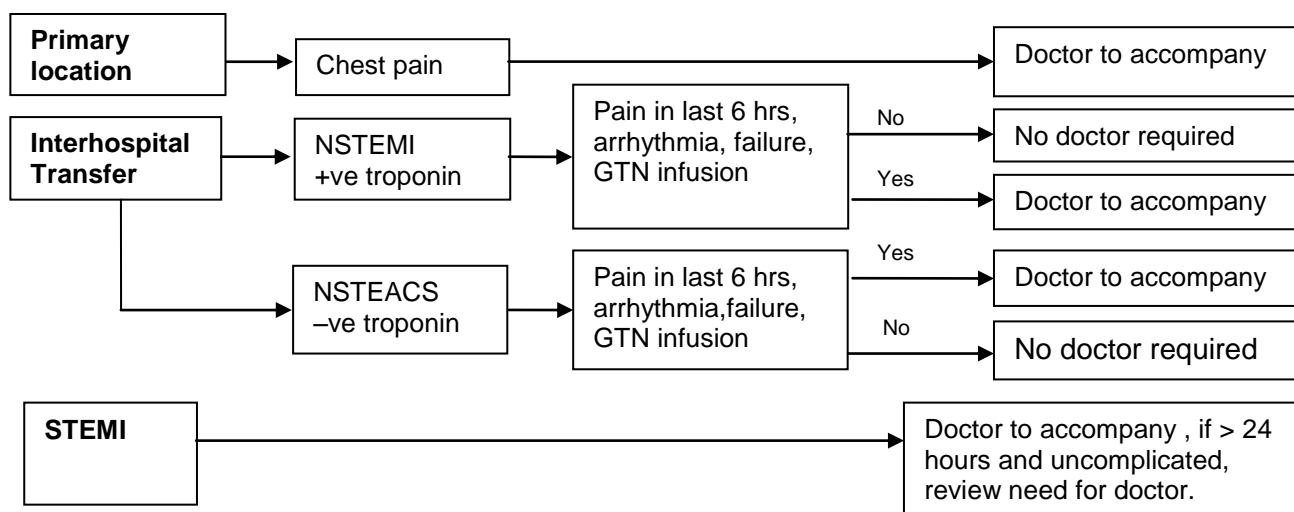
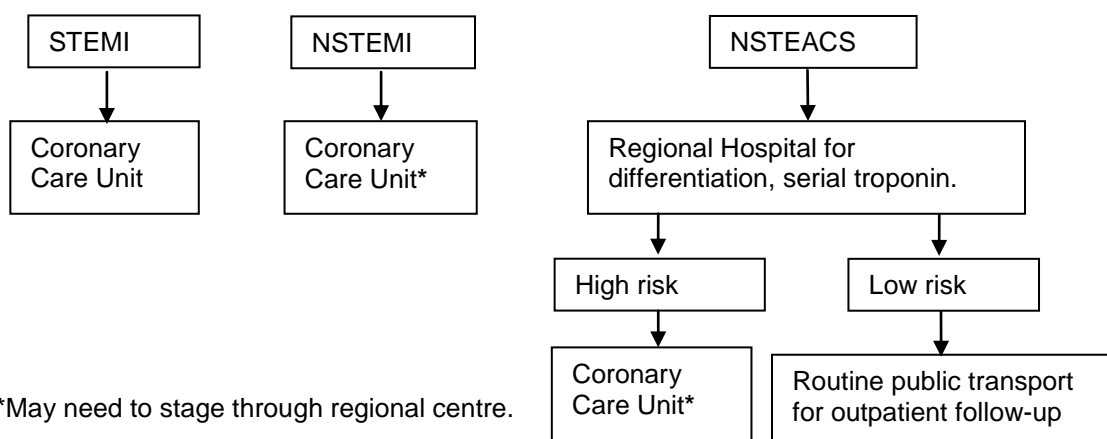


Figure 6. Crew Mix

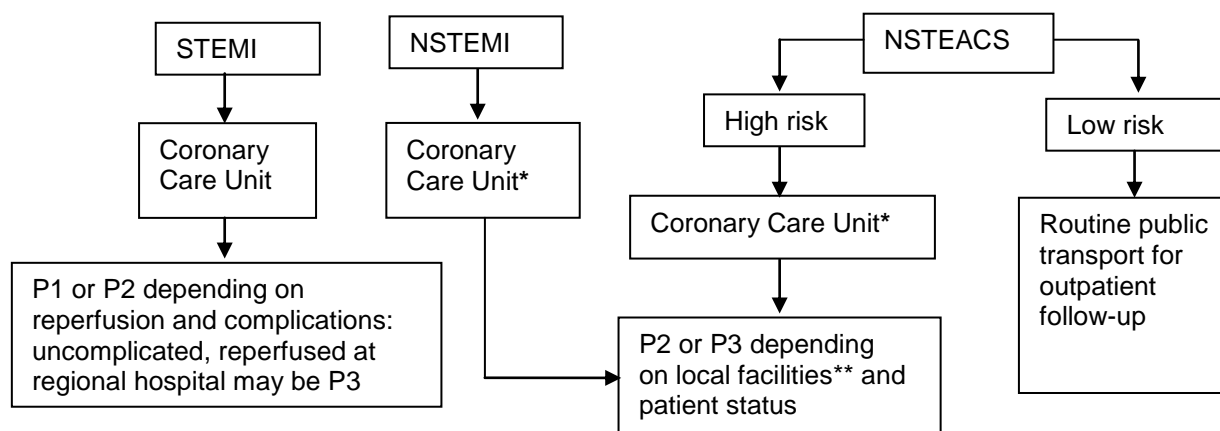
## 5. Disposition and prioritisation

- a) Chest pain in a *primary* location or hospital without doctor, tasked as P1 doctor accompanied



\*May need to stage through regional centre.

- b) *Inter-hospital* transport of ACS



\*May need to stage through regional centre

\*\*Regional centre with HDU P3 often appropriate

Figure 7. Disposition and Prioritisation

## 6. Ongoing management and communications

- Patients should receive ongoing monitoring, before and during transport, with access to early defibrillation.
- Provide oxygen to symptomatic patients and to correct altitude hypoxia.
- Aim to achieve a pain free status inpatient (i.e. Remove any ongoing ischaemia).
- Escalation in pain should result in repeat 12 lead ECG, some patients may require in-flight thrombolysis if a STEMI is evolving.
- Patients requiring immediate access to PTCA should have their arrival times communicated to receiving hospitals to ensure the appropriate reception. Priority 1 ambulances may occasionally be required for these patients, operations staff need to be made aware of this requirement.

## 7. When RFDS stock of tenecteplase is used, the flight doctor must write a replacement script on a standard prescription form including the correct patient name and Medicare number. This must be provided to the flight nurse at the end of the flight. This is **vital** to maintain supply.

### **Medical Chest Items**

GTN spray (Item 190), Aspirin 300mg tabs (Item 62), Morphine 10mg amps (Item 188)

### **References**

National Heart Foundation of Australia "Guidelines for Management of Acute Coronary Syndromes" 2006 *MJA* Vol 184 No. 8 Supplement.

2011 Addendum to National Heart Foundation of Australia, Cardiac Society of Australia and New Zealand "Guidelines for The Management of Acute Coronary Syndromes 2006" March 2011

Australian Resuscitation Council. Acute Coronary Syndromes. Guideline 14.1 February 2011

## 2.2 Acute Pulmonary Oedema

### Theory

Respiratory failure due to acute pulmonary oedema (APO) will be exacerbated by altitude hypoxia so supplemental oxygen is mandatory.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

Flights are usually either priority 1 or 2, doctor accompanied, depending on the facilities at the referring location.

1. Diagnose and treat precipitating causes, including myocardial infarction, cardiac arrhythmias, pericardial effusion, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy and valvular heart disease. Consider non-cardiogenic pulmonary oedema.
2. Administer high flow oxygen with the patient sitting upright. Maximal supplemental oxygen followed by assisted ventilation should be used before resorting to a sea level cabin.
3. Give nitrates, either sublingually, or by infusion (commence at 10 µg/min) (See Infusion Guideline). Maintain a systolic blood pressure  $\geq$  90mmHg. Topical application may not be reliable if sweaty or clammy.
4. Give IV frusemide 20 mg - 80 mg IV, repeating at 20 minutely intervals as necessary. Higher doses may be required if patient is taking frusemide regularly.
5. Note: A urinary catheter is essential to monitor output hourly.
6. If hypotensive, consider inotropic support (may then add vasodilator once in situ).
7. Consider the need for digoxin, especially if in atrial fibrillation.
8. If condition worsening consider NIV (Non Invasive Ventilation) or ventilation with  $\geq$ 5 mmHg of PEEP and high dose oxygen. (See [Non-invasive Ventilation](#) )
9. Other less commonly used treatment modalities include venesection of 500 mL of blood (beware risk of hypovolaemia) or rotating tourniquets.
10. In dialysis patients who are overloaded, consider inducing diarrhoea with sorbitol / lactulose (difficult in the in-flight environment).

### Special Notes

1. Intubation should be considered for all patients in APO who require high flow O<sub>2</sub> at rest at the referring location. Especially look for confusion, exhaustion, a rising PCO<sub>2</sub> and or relatively low PO<sub>2</sub>.
2. NIV may avoid the need for intubation but its use in the transport setting can be difficult (See 15.7 Non-Invasive Ventilation).
3. Avoid nitrates in patients who have received sildenafil (Viagra) in the previous 24 hours.
4. Morphine has been shown to adversely affect outcome in some studies and should be only be used judiciously.

### Medical Chest Items

Frusemide tabs 40 mg (Item 85), Sublingual GTN spray (Item 190), Aspirin 300 mg tabs (Item 62).



## References

- Bersten A, Soni N. *Oh's Intensive Care Manual*. 6<sup>th</sup> ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009
- Cardiovascular drug guidelines [revised 2012 Feb]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.
- Dr Mark Thomas. *Orientation Manual for Renal Unit Medical Officers*, Current 1999.
- Royal Perth Hospital. *CAPD Manual for Remote Nurses*, Current 1999.
- Graham CA. Pharmacological therapy of acute pulmonary oedema in the emergency department. *Emergency Medicine*, 16(1): 47-54. 2004.

## 2.3 Cardiac Arrhythmias

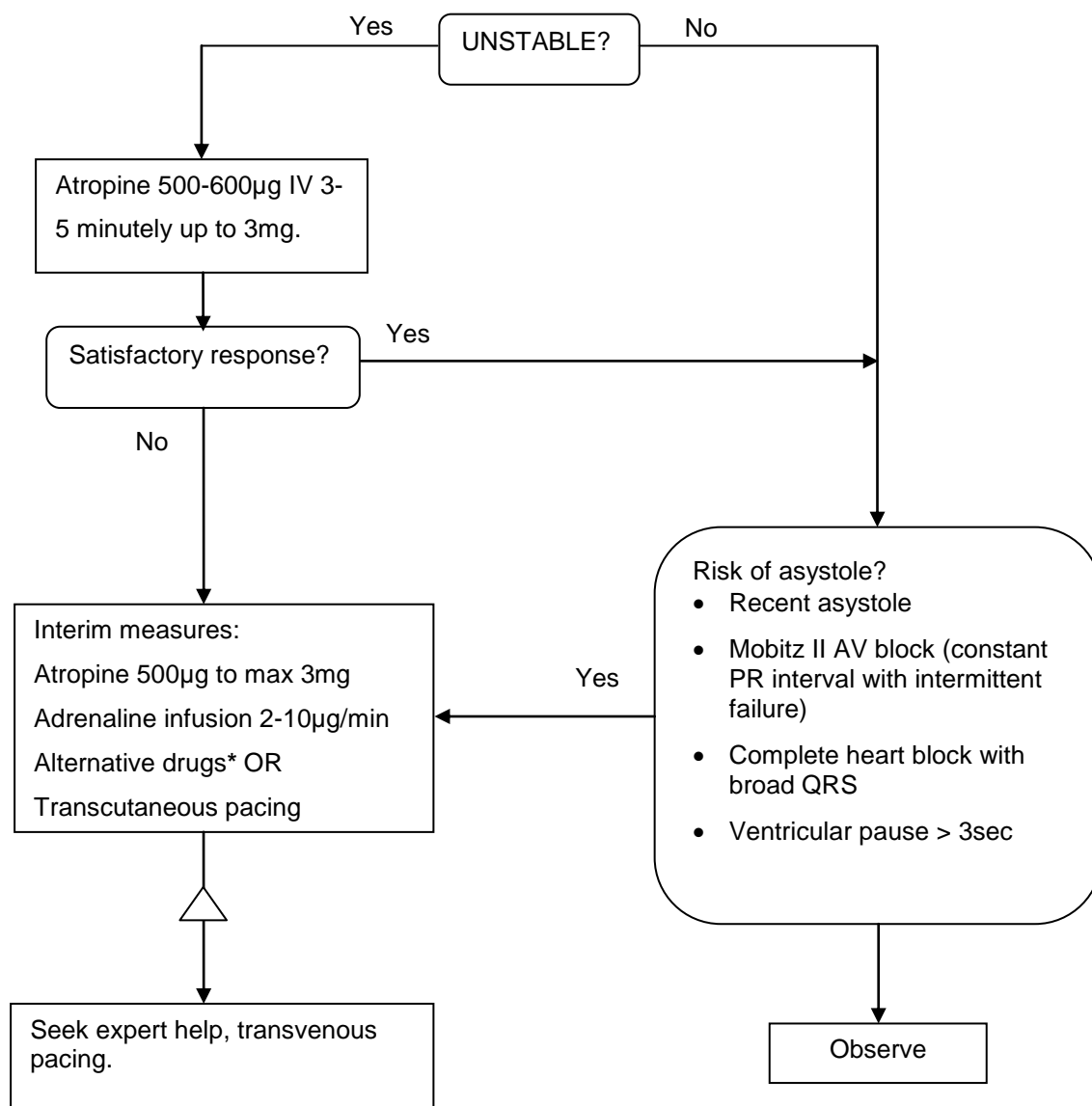
### Theory

1. Cardiac arrhythmias are common and do not always require treatment in flight.
2. Diagnosis should be based on a 12 lead ECG where possible.
3. Priorities are always AIRWAY, BREATHING and CIRCULATION with application of supplemental oxygen and establishment of IV access. Patients should be fully monitored. If the patient is PULSELESS manage immediately according to the ALS algorithm. (See [Figure 2. Newborn Life Support Flow Chart](#)
4. Advanced Life Support (Adult) , [Advanced Life Support \(Paediatric\)](#) ) .
5. Determine if the patient is STABLE or UNSTABLE. Unstable patients and patients with “stable VT” require immediate management. Features of instability are as follows:
  - a) Hypotension
  - b) Chest pain
  - c) Pulmonary oedema
  - d) Altered conscious state
  - e) Bradycardia <40 bpm , Tachycardia > 150 bpm
6. All antiarrhythmics have the potential to exacerbate dysrhythmias and cause myocardial depression.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. During pre-flight assessment type of arrhythmia and stability should be established. A copy of the 12-lead ECG should be obtained. Advice regarding immediate management should be given including resuscitation, drugs and cardioversion.
2. Prioritisation will depend on skills and resources available at the referring location.
3. Unstable patients and those with a significant precipitating event (e.g. Acute coronary syndrome) and co-morbidities likely to result in an in-flight deterioration should be doctor accompanied.
4. All patients should have oxygen, venous access and be fully monitored.
5. Management is reliant on recognition of specific arrhythmias.
6. Sinus bradycardia and tachycardias require treatment of the underlying cause (e.g. hypovolaemia, fever, pain, left ventricular failure (LVF)) rather than specific antiarrhythmics or cardioversion.
7. For digoxin toxicity Digibind® may be required. Access at regional hospital or transport patient to regional hospital.

## Bradycardias



**\*Alternatives include:**

- Isoprenaline (2-5µg/min)
- Dopamine (2-5µg/kg/min)
- Aminophylline
- Glycopyrrolate
- If  $\beta$ -Blocker or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  Channel blocker overdose consider glucagon or High-dose insulin/glucose/potassium infusion
- Atropine contraindicated in cardiac transplant patients

Figure 8. Bradycardias

## Tachycardias (with a pulse)

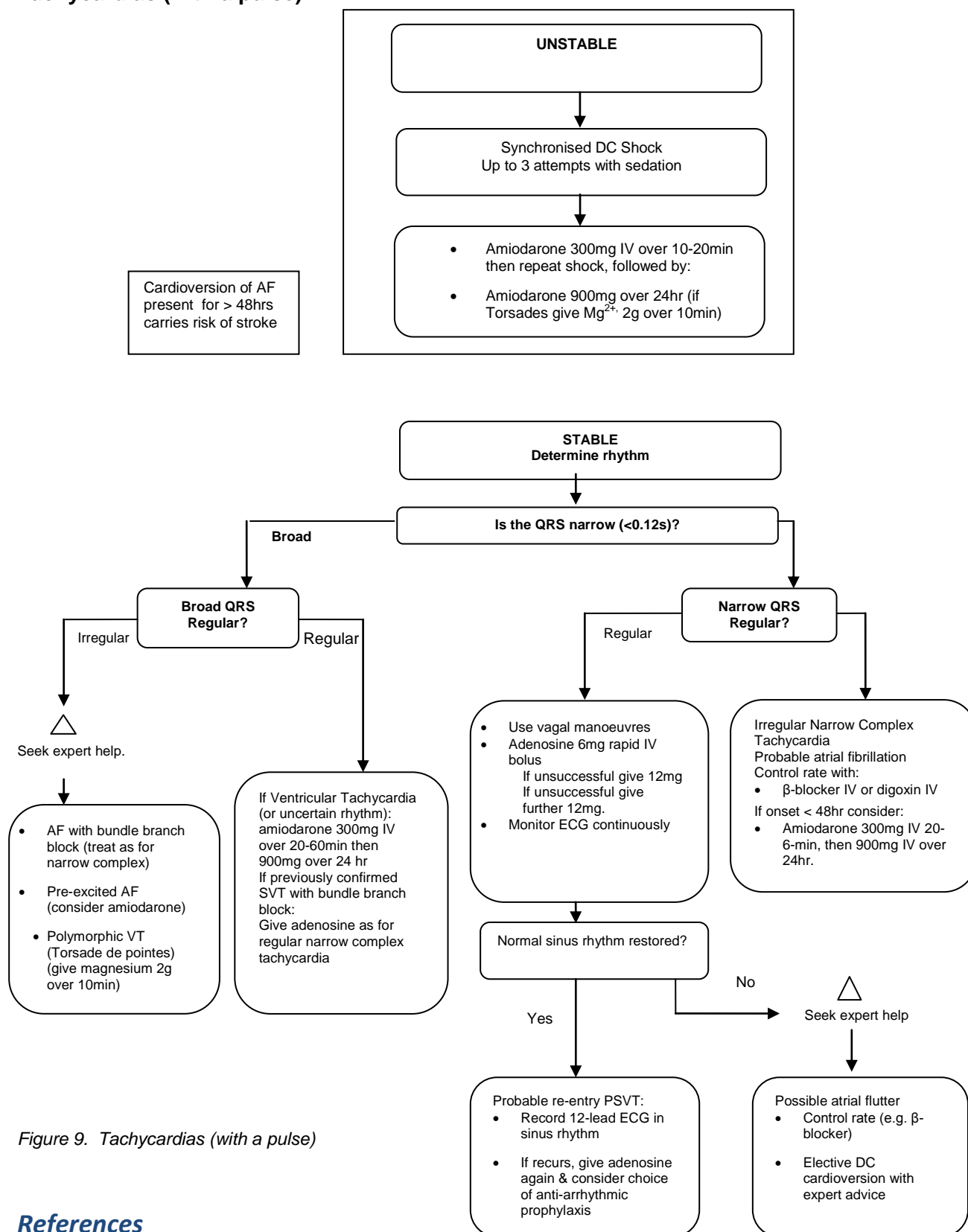


Figure 9. Tachycardias (with a pulse)

## References

Australian Resuscitation Council. Guideline 11.9. Managing Acute Dysrhythmias. November 2009.

Cardiovascular drug guidelines [revised 2012 Feb]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.

## 3 ENDOCRINE

### 3.1 Diabetic Ketoacidosis

#### *Theory*

1. Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) is a state of relative or absolute deficiency of insulin, resulting in hyperglycaemia, ketosis, high anion gap metabolic acidosis and dehydration. The hyperglycaemia causes glycosuria, osmotic diuresis and progressive loss of fluid and electrolytes. The biochemical criteria are, venous pH <7.3 **or** bicarbonate <15 mmol/L **plus** blood or urinary ketones.
2. In a fully evolved hyperglycaemic coma, the most important clinical features are deep rapid breathing (Kussmaul respirations, secondary to acidosis), severe dehydration, circulatory insufficiency (hypotension, tachycardia) muscular weakness and a depressed level of consciousness.
3. Average deficits in diabetic ketoacidosis are 5-7 litres of water, 300-450 mmol of sodium and 3-5 mmol/kg of potassium. Correction of hyperglycaemia (4-8 hours) is more rapid than correction of acidosis (10-20 hours).
4. Underlying causes include; infection, newly diagnosed insulin dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM), insufficient insulin (compliance, pump failure), infarction (myocardial, cerebral, gastrointestinal, peripheral vascular), intercurrent illness (e.g. diarrhoea and vomiting).

#### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

1. Pre-flight and in-flight management will be aimed at replacing fluid and electrolyte losses, correcting the ketosis and hyperglycaemia as well as commencing treatment for any underlying cause.
2. Flights are usually Priority 1 or 2, doctor accompanied, depending on the facilities at the referring location.
3. Ensure a secure airway, administer oxygen therapy and establish IV access.
4. Monitor GCS and vital signs frequently, BSL and urine output hourly (aim for >0.5mL/kg/hr) and consider NGT insertion. Blood gas, venous may be sufficient (pH, K+ and bicarb) monitoring 2 hourly for initial 6 hours.
5. Aim for 3mmol/hr fall in BSL, 3mmol/hr rise in bicarbonate, maintain potassium in normal range. Avoid hypoglycaemia.
6. IV fluids:
  - a) Normal saline 500mL (10mL/kg for children) bolus over 10-15 mins if shocked or SBP <90mmHg systolic, with dose repeated if required. If contemplating a third bolus in children seek advice, rarely required and potential for harm.
  - b) Subsequently or if SBP >90mmHg systolic use normal saline 1L in first hour, then
  - c) Normal saline (with 20mmol KCl) x 2 L over 4 hours, then
  - d) Normal saline (with KCl) 2L over 8 hours, then
  - e) Normal saline (with KCl) 1L over 6 hours,
  - f) Further litres dependent on vital signs, clinical hydration state and CVP.
  - g) Add 10% dextrose when BSL < 14mmol/L at 125 mL/hr. Normal saline may be given concurrently if still correcting volume. (Children: requirements dependent on degree of dehydration. Aim to give deficit [% dehydration x body weight] + maintenance over 48 hours).

7. Insulin infusion:
  - In adults give actrapid (50 units in 50mL N/Saline) at 0.1 IU/kg/hr IV, continue the patient's usual long acting insulin if prescribed.
  - In children give actrapid 0.2 IU/kg SC then follow with 0.1 IU/kg SC every 2 hours, reduce to 0.1 IU/kg SC every 4-6/24 when BSL < 8 mmol/L.
8. If laboratory facilities available check electrolytes, glucose and blood culture; also request urea, creatinine, osmolality, blood gases, 12-lead ECG, to look for signs of hyper- or hypokalaemia and acute myocardial ischaemia.
9. Potassium level may be high initially despite depleted stores. Take care with administration if the serum level is not known and do not commence potassium replacement in the presence of oliguria or if serum K<sup>+</sup> is > 5.5mmol. Replace K<sup>+</sup> at 40mmol/hr if K<sup>+</sup> < 3.5mmol.

### Special Notes

The endocrinology team at PMH prefer to be involved in management decisions for paediatric patients early.

### References

Princess Margaret Hospital for Children. *Emergency Department Clinical Guidelines*. 1997.

Joint British Diabetes Societies Inpatient Care Group. *The Management of Diabetic Ketoacidosis in Adults*. NHS. March 2010.

Rosenbloom AL. "The management of diabetic ketoacidosis in children". *Diabetes Ther*. 2010; 1(2): 103-120.

Diabetic Ketoacidosis- an Overview and update-presentation by Dr Malcolm Rivers Royal Flying Doctor Service. Jandakot. May 2011

Endocrinology drug guidelines [revised 2009 Jun]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.

Royal Children's Hospital, Melbourne, Australia. Clinical practice Guideline on Diabetes mellitus, [Internet, cited 21/02/2012], available from: [http://www.rch.org.au/clinicalguide/cpg.cfm?doc\\_id=5189](http://www.rch.org.au/clinicalguide/cpg.cfm?doc_id=5189)

## 3.2 Hypoglycaemia

### Theory

1. Hypoglycaemia needs to be considered as a differential diagnosis in all unconscious patients (especially but not exclusively diabetic patients), in all patients with abnormal behaviour and in all patients with unexplained neurological signs.
2. Moderate hypoglycaemia is characterised by tachycardia, sweating, clamminess, paraesthesia (face and hands), irritability, hunger and agitation.
3. Severe hypoglycaemia is characterised by mental confusion, bizarre behaviour, seizures, hypothermia and coma (hydrated, quiet and flaccid).
4. All symptoms may be blunted by alcohol, sedatives, patients on  $\beta$ -blockers and in the elderly.
5. The most common cause of hypoglycaemia is overdose of insulin or oral hypoglycaemics, particularly long acting sulphonylureas. Other causes include inadequate food intake, reactive (post-prandial), drugs (salicylates, iron, alcohol), status epilepticus and counter-regulatory (Addison's disease, hypopituitarism, myxoedema, severe cachexia, hepatic failure or severe renal failure).

Table 4. Hypoglycaemia – Normal Reference Range by Age

| Age             | Normal Reference Range |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| 0-6 months      | 2.2-5.0mmol/L          |
| 7 - 12months    | 1.9-8.0 mmol/L         |
| 2 years         | 2.8-7.2mmol/L          |
| 3 years         | 3.3-6.7 mmol/L         |
| adults(fasting) | 3.6-5.8 mmol/L         |

Note: Hypoglycaemic symptoms and signs may occur at almost normal levels if a patient is accustomed to high blood sugar levels.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. If conscious:
  - Oral barley sugar, sweetened orange juice or sandwiches.
  - If cause was a long-acting insulin (NPH or Lente) or oral sulphonylurea, an IV infusion of 5% dextrose 100-125 mL/hr will need to be run for 24 hours and the patient will need to be admitted for observation.
2. If unconscious:
  - Resuscitation as for all unconscious patients, with attention to airway, breathing and circulation.
  - Establish IV access and give 50 mL of 50% dextrose in water at 10 mL/min.
    - May cause hypokalaemia if given too quickly.
  - Most patients recover in 5-10 mins unless hypoglycaemia was prolonged.
  - If chronic alcohol consumption is suspected, give 100 mg thiamine IM or IV before dextrose to prevent Wernicke's encephalopathy.
  - Treat fitting with diazepam 0.2 mg/kg IV, repeated as needed or PR diazepam 0.5 mg/kg

## Special Notes

1. Neonates:
  - Give 20 mL of 5% dextrose orally or NGT or 0.5 mL/kg of 50% dextrose IV or 2 mL/kg of 10% dextrose IV.
2. Glucagon:
  - Can be given 1 mg IM or SC or IV, 0.03 mg/kg IM for children to a maximum dose of 1mg.
  - Side effects include nausea and vomiting, initially hyperkalaemia, then hypokalaemia.
3. In severe sulphonylurea overdose treatment is often prolonged requiring IV 10% glucose and frequent monitoring. Octreotide can reduce the duration of IV therapy and the need for additional boluses of 50% glucose. This should only be considered in severe overdose.
4. If indicated use: octreotide 50micrograms SC 8 hourly for up to 3 doses.

## References

Dunn R, Dille S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5<sup>th</sup> ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010

Bersten A, Soni N. Oh's Intensive Care Manual. 6<sup>th</sup> ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009.

Fulde G. Emergency Medicine, The Principles of practice. 5th ed. Australia: Saunders. 2009.

Endocrinology drug guidelines [revised 2009 Jun]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.

Australian Medicines Handbook [CD-ROM]. Adelaide: Australian Medicines Handbook Pty Ltd; January 2010.



### 3.3 Hypocalcaemia

#### Theory

1. This is a relatively common condition and, though rarely life-threatening, it needs to be recognised and treated appropriately if potentially serious problems are to be prevented.
2. Serum calcium is composed of 2 major fractions, 45% of the total serum calcium is bound to plasma proteins, chiefly albumin and the other 55% exists as ionised  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . Changes in the ionised fraction result in the signs and symptoms of hypo-and hypercalcaemia. Acidosis increases the ionised fraction by displacing calcium from albumin whereas alkalosis decreases it; rapid changes in plasma acid-base status can therefore result in symptomatic hypocalcaemia. Examples include hyperventilation resulting in tetany and hypocalcaemia from massive transfusion of citrated blood.

#### Symptoms of Hypocalcaemia

In the early stages these include peripheral and peri-oral paraesthesiae and later tetany, carpo-pedal spasm, hyperreflexia, colicky abdominal pain, stridor due to laryngospasm and convulsions. In infants one may also see apnoeic spells and intermittent cyanosis.

#### Signs of Hypocalcaemia

1. These include Chvostek's sign (spasm of the ipsilateral facial muscles when the facial nerve is tapped over the parotid gland), Trousseau's sign (carpo-pedal spasm caused by the reduction of the blood supply to the hand when a BP cuff above systolic pressure is applied to the forearm for 3 mins) and ECG changes which include lengthening of the QT interval and arrhythmias.
2. Hypocalcaemia may be associated with hypomagnesaemia and hypokalaemia; this can be of significance in aboriginal children and is probably related to renal and gastrointestinal losses.

#### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. The flight priority usually will depend on the underlying condition. If the patient is symptomatic and requiring active treatment then the flight will probably be Priority 1 or 2 and doctor accompanied.
2. Hypocalcaemia should always be considered in critically ill patients with sepsis, burns, acute renal failure, those who have been transfused with citrated blood, pancreatitis and those with hypoalbuminaemia.
3. Wherever possible blood electrolytes, including  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{K}^{+}$  and acid-base status should be known and all abnormalities corrected. The iStat analyser can provide valuable information and should be available in all cases where electrolyte and acid-base imbalances are present or are suspected. A 12-lead ECG should always be available as well.
4. In mild cases with minimal symptoms and no tetany, oral replacement therapy is appropriate.
5. In more severe cases the treatment for adults is IV calcium gluconate (20mL) or calcium chloride 10% solution (5-10 mL). Monitor the Pulse rate, BP and ECG.
6. For Infants use IV calcium gluconate 10% (0.22 mmol  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ /mL). Give 0.5mmol/kg slowly over 10-20 mins. If bradycardia develops then the infusion should be ceased immediately.

### **Special Notes**

1. Normal values (PathWest): Total calcium 2.25-2.60 mmol/L; ionised calcium 1.12-1.32 mmol/L.
2. Calcium can precipitate or exacerbate digitalis toxicity therefore IV calcium must be given very slowly in patients on digoxin and the ECG must be monitored continuously.

### **References**

Edmond K. *Guidelines for the investigation and treatment of children with diarrhoea and dehydration*. Department of Paediatrics, Royal Darwin Hospital. May 1997

Dunn R, Dilley S, Brookes J, et al. *The Emergency Medicine Manual*. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.

Marx J, Hockberger R, Walls R. *Rosen's Emergency Medicine. Concepts and Clinical Practice*. 7<sup>th</sup> ed. Mosby. 2009.

Saunders C, Ho M. *Current Emergency Diagnosis and Treatment*. 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Appleton Lange. 1992.

## 4 GASTROINTESTINAL

### 4.1 Acute Pancreatitis

#### *Theory*

1. A multi-system disease due to inflammation of the pancreas. Gallstones and alcohol abuse account for 75% of cases. Other causes include, mumps, vasculitis, trauma, drugs such as azathioprine, antiretroviral and chemotherapeutic drugs, penetrating peptic ulcer and post ERCP. Overall mortality is 1.5%, up to 2% and usually restricted to patients with severe necrotizing pancreatitis.
2. Signs and symptoms depend on the amount of glandular destruction.
  - a) Mild to Moderate:
    - Epigastric pain, often of rapid onset and relieved by sitting forward, abdominal distension, nausea and vomiting, raised amylase and lipase, pain radiating to back, fever, tachycardia and hypotension.
  - b) Severe:
    - Hypotensive shock secondary to intraperitoneal blood and fluid loss, respiratory failure, acidosis, hypocalcaemia, abdominal mass.
3. Mild to moderate pancreatitis is usually self-limiting in 1 week. Complications, however, include chronic pancreatitis, diabetes, pancreatic insufficiency, ascites and cholelithiasis.
4. Severe pancreatitis can be complicated by acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), metabolic acidosis, acute tubular necrosis, disseminated intravascular coagulation, shock, ileus, pleural effusions, severe vomiting, haemorrhage, sepsis or necrosis of the pancreas.
5. Pseudocysts can form; these are encapsulated fluid collections full of enzymes. Often multiple, if they are <6cm they tend to resolve. They may erode into blood vessels. A ruptured pseudocyst is a surgical emergency as it can cause massive bleeding.
6. Operative interventions if they are required may include laparotomy, endoscopic sphincterotomy and stone extraction if cholelithiasis. Total parenteral nutrition may be required if necrosis or infection is present. Occasionally debridement of necrotic pancreatic tissue and drainage of pseudocysts may be indicated.
7. Useful diagnostic tests, where available include amylase, lipase, FBC, U&E & creatinine,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , glucose, LFTs, bilirubin, arterial blood gases, coagulation studies, blood group and cross-match. A chest x-ray may show a raised left hemi-diaphragm, pleural effusions, atelectasis or ARDS. CT scan may show pancreatic necrosis or pseudocyst formation.

#### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

1. Flights are usually Priority 1 or 2 and doctor accompanied in severe cases.
2. Administer supplemental oxygen by mask:
  - Intubation should be considered prior to transfer if evidence of ARDS is present and high flow rates of oxygen are required at rest in the hospital.
3. Ensure adequate IV access prior to transfer, preferably with 2 IV lines. Fluid resuscitation should be aggressive with massive sequestration of fluid in severe cases.
4. A nasogastric tube is essential and urinary catheterization is desirable in all but the mildest of cases.
5. Treat shock according to guidelines for management of shock; A decreasing haematocrit may indicate haemorrhagic pancreatitis - transfusion may be required.

6. Adequate analgesia is important. Narcotics should be given IV and titrated to effect. Metoclopramide 10 to 20 mg IV or ondansetron 4 to 8mg IV or buccal may be required for nausea/vomiting.
7. In-flight management of acid / base and electrolyte imbalances can be assisted by use of the iStat analyser. Insulin infusion should be considered if the blood glucose is >15 mmol/L. Also consider calcium gluconate for hypocalcaemia.
8. Antibiotics are rarely indicated in the acute phase as sepsis occurs later in the illness but if sepsis is present give IV metronidazole and ceftriaxone or cefotaxime.
9. ECG monitoring is recommended , non-specific ST-T wave changes and bradycardia due to toxins may be seen.

## **References**

Dunn R, Dilley S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.

Bersten A, Soni N. Oh's Intensive Care Manual. 6th ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009.

Fulde G. Emergency Medicine, The Principles of Practice. 5th ed. Australia: Saunders. 2009.

Gastrointestinal drug guidelines [revised 2011 Feb]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.

## 4.2 Haematemesis and Melaena

### Theory

1. Gastrointestinal tract (GIT) bleeding is a common medical emergency with significant morbidity and mortality. Despite treatment advances, mortality for patients presenting with upper gastrointestinal haemorrhage remains around 5-10%.
2. Haematemesis indicates bleeding proximal to the ligament of Treitz and occurs in only 50-66% of patients with upper GIT bleeding.
3. Melaena may mean haemorrhage from either the upper GIT or proximal colon.
4. Gastro-oesophageal varices account for 2-15% of all upper GIT bleeding. Bleeding will cease spontaneously in only 20-30% of cases but as bleeding is often more severe and recurrent, mortality approaches 25-40% for each episode of variceal haemorrhage.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Flights for patients will be usually priority 1 or 2. Flights where the patient has ongoing haemorrhage resulting in instability and/or requiring transfusion will be doctor accompanied.
2. Pre-flight management will include resuscitation of the patient and replacement of intravascular volume with isotonic crystalloid (normal saline or Hartmann's) or colloid (gelofusine or haemaccel).
3. Blood should be given if there is persistent haemodynamic instability despite 2 litres of crystalloid or colloid, if the initial Hb <8mg/dl, if there is significant re-bleeding, and in those patients with co-morbidities making them unable to tolerate periods of hypoperfusion or anaemia.
4. Oxygen should be administered to all patients.
5. Continuous ECG monitoring, non-invasive blood pressure monitoring and pulse oximetry should be instituted.
6. Patients should all have adequate IV access (two large bore cannulas 14 or 16g) Some patients may require inotropic support if still haemodynamically unstable despite adequate fluid therapy.
7. If possible blood (ideally cross matched type specific or if unable then uncrossed O neg) should be taken on the flight.
8. Terlipressin has largely replaced Octreotide in the management of variceal haemorrhage. Dose is 1.7mg IV bolus 6 hourly for 24 hours then 1.7mg IV 6 hourly for next 24hours. Terlipressin is contraindicated in pregnancy, peripheral vasoconstriction may also cause reduction in cardiac output by increasing afterload
9. Fresh frozen plasma should be given when the prothrombin time is 3 seconds greater than the control or when large transfusions are required. Platelet transfusion is rarely required unless platelet count is less than  $50 \times 10^9 /L$ . (See [Transfusion Medicine, Major Haemorrhage](#)).
10. If bleeding from a gastric ulcer is suspected then IV proton pump inhibitor therapy should be considered. Esomeprazole or omeprazole or pantoprazole 80mg over 15 to 30 mins followed by infusion at 8mg/hour. (See Drug Infusion Guideline 20. Pantoprazole.)

## ***Special Notes***

Balloon tamponade is not available to RFDS staff but occasionally patients from regional centres may have a Sengstaken-Blakemore tube or Minnesota tube in place, these patients are likely to be transported intubated. Effects of gas expansion during air transport must be considered. Only the gastric balloon should be inflated as inflation of the oesophageal balloon can cause severe oesophageal ulceration.

## ***References***

Dunn R, Dilley S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.

Cameron P, Jelinek G, Kelly A, et al. Textbook of Adult Emergency Medicine. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. Churchill Livingstone. 2009.

Gastrointestinal drug guidelines [revised 2011 Feb]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.

Ioannou, GN; Doust, J; Rockey, DC. Terlipressin for acute oesophageal variceal haemorrhage. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2003, Issue 1. Art. No.:CD002147. DOI:1002/14651858. CD002147.

## 4.3 Intestinal Obstruction

### Theory

1. Intestinal obstruction may be caused by physical obstruction or absence of function (paralytic ileus).
2. Intestinal obstruction may occur in the small bowel or colon. Obstruction to the small bowel is acute; that of the colon, less so. Either may be partial or complete.
3. Patients with intestinal obstruction all have a quantity of gas trapped within the gut. Expansion of gas at altitude causes pain and may cause perforation of necrotic tissue. Patients with a complete intestinal obstruction, especially obstruction due to rigid external structures (e.g. hernia), are even more at risk.
4. Vomiting is common and changes in pressurisation can precipitate further vomiting with its attendant risk of aspiration.
5. Prolonged obstruction is complicated by perforation, sepsis and fluid/electrolyte disturbance. Patients should be resuscitated with appropriate fluids, K<sup>+</sup> and antibiotics pre-flight.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. The type and duration of the obstruction will determine the flight priority. Sicker patients, the very young and the very old may require a doctor accompanied flight.
2. All flights will require sea-level (or ground level) pressurisation. This, in most cases will preclude intermediary landings or 'meets' at airstrips whose elevation is considerably higher than sea-level.
  - The major changes in atmospheric pressure occur closest to the earth's surface in the first few thousand feet - if a patient is to become compromised it will occur there.
  - As in all things, however, occasionally a compromise is required if the risks (e.g. extra time taken to fly to Carnarvon rather than Meekatharra) outweigh the benefits. In some instances a patient with a bowel obstruction may suffer some additional pain on ascent to altitude but otherwise no serious adverse effects.
3. All patients will be 'nil by mouth', and will require IV fluids with close attention to be paid to hydration status. Patients who are vomiting or who have a small bowel obstruction require a nasogastric tube (NGT), which should be kept on straight drainage and aspirated at regular intervals. Sicker or elderly patients may require an indwelling catheter to allow more accurate monitoring of their urine output and fluid balance.
4. Where patients have been obstructed for some time, an up to date Na<sup>+</sup>, K<sup>+</sup> levels and acid-base status can be provided by using the i-STAT analyser.
5. Analgesia should be provided with titrated IV narcotics. An anti-emetic is unnecessary and may be potentially harmful. Nausea and vomiting should be treated with NGT aspiration.

### References

MIMS Annual 23rd Ed 1999, Medimedia Australia Pty Ltd, p. 3-339

Marx J, Hockberger R, Walls R. Rosen's Emergency Medicine. Concepts and Clinical Practice. 7<sup>th</sup> ed. Mosby. 2009

## 5 GENITOURINARY

### 5.1 Acute/Chronic Renal Failure

#### *Theory*

1. Acute renal failure is defined as a rapid increase in metabolic waste products (urea, creatinine, K<sup>+</sup>) usually associated with marked decrease in urine output. Isolated acute renal failure has a mortality of approximately 10%, in the setting of multi-organ failure the figure approaches 40-80%.
2. Features of acute renal failure include:
  - A rise in creatinine of > 100 µmol/1/day,
  - Oliguria (urine output less than 0.5mL/kg/hr)
  - Either fluid depletion or fluid overload
  - Altered mental state
  - Hyperkalemia
  - Metabolic acidosis (exacerbates hyperkalemia and causes hypotension and nausea). More rapid onset in catabolic states (sepsis, GIT bleed, rhabdomyolysis)
  - Uraemic symptoms - nausea, hiccoughs, drowsiness, flap, foetor, pericarditis, bruising / bleeding, itch, hypotension, coma,
  - Death due to arrhythmia (secondary to high K<sup>+</sup>), pulmonary oedema, GIT bleed, pericardial tamponade.

#### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

1. Priority and the need for a doctor will need to be determined on an individual basis. Most patients in acute renal failure will be tasked as priority 1 or 2, doctor accompanied.
2. Determine the cause:
  - a) Pre-renal:
    - Absolute hypovolaemia – bleeding, vomiting, diarrhoea, diuresis, burns, inadequate intake.
    - Relative hypovolaemia – vasodilatation (sepsis, vasodilators), reduced oncotic pressure (cirrhosis, nephrosis, sepsis, malnutrition),
    - Reduced cardiac output – pulmonary embolism, pericardial tamponade, infarct, arrhythmia.
    - Reno-vascular – renal artery thrombosis, atheroemboli.
  - b) Renal:
    - Glomerulonephritis, acute tubular necrosis, acute interstitial nephritis.
  - c) Vascular:
    - Malignant hypertension, haemolytic uraemic syndrome, severe pre-eclampsia.
  - d) Post - renal:
    - Pelvocalyceal - ureteric (solitary kidney, extrinsic (lymphoma), mural (stricture), luminal (stone, clot, sloughed papilla).
    - Vesicoureteric junction - bladder (Carcinoma of: bladder, cervix, bowel, stone).
    - Bladder neck - urethra (blocked catheter, stricture, prostate).
3. Determine type of renal failure and volume status:
  - a) Oliguric vs. non – oliguric?



- Oliguric - <20 mL/hr, 500 mL/day. Oliguric has a higher mortality, treat early and monitor U&E, volume.
- b) Patient 'wet' vs. 'dry'. Assess volume:
- In chronic renal failure check weight daily as a marker of total body water (1 kg =1 litre).
  - Low Na<sup>+</sup> implies water overload not Na<sup>+</sup> deficiency.
  - Extracellular fluid; oedema signifies > 2 kg of fluid overload.
  - Reduced skin turgor if dry (beware elderly)
  - Intravascular volume;
    - i. JVP (aim for 2 cm at 45°),
    - ii. BP (high if overloaded, postural drop present if dry)
    - iii. Capillary return; increased if dry.
4. Renal Support:
- Maintain intravascular volume: aim for a MAP of 75-80mmHg by replacing fluids (monitor JVP / CVP), +/- inotropes
  - Remove nephrotoxins (eg. NSAIDs)
  - Monitor urine output
  - There is no evidence to support the use of “renal or low-dose dopamine”
  - Use of loop diuretics (frusemide) may reduce the need for dialysis
5. Manage complications:
- Hyperkalemia
  - Pulmonary oedema

### **Special Notes**

1. For Chronic Renal Failure patients on or nearing dialysis;
- Avoid catheterization
  - Avoid IV cannulation or blood letting in forearm veins (may be required for fistula)
  - No BP measurements, cannulae or venepuncture on arm with fistula
2. Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CADP) complications:
- a) Overload:
- Hypertension, increased weight, pulmonary oedema – Treat with more frequent bag changes (if getting more fluid back than instilled) or increase strength of glucose (max 2.5%)
- b) Dehydration:
- Treat by reducing glucose strength of bag
- c) Peritonitis:
- Pain, fever, diarrhoea, cloudy bag – Send whole bag for MC&S, give vancomycin 2g and gentamicin 0.6mg/kg (max 50mg) into bag daily until culture results
- d) Exit site infection:
- Swab, then if Gram pos, vancomycin weekly for four weeks, or flucloxacillin 500mg 6 hourly for 2 weeks. If Gram neg, ciprofloxacin 500mg orally for 3 weeks.

## References

Antibiotic drug guidelines [revised 2010 Jun]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.

Bersten A, Soni N. Oh's Intensive Care Manual. 6th ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009.

CAPD *Manual for Remote Nurses*, Royal Perth Hospital, current 1999.

Beed M, Sherman R, Mahajan R. Emergencies in Critical Care. Oxford: Oxford University Press. 2007

## 6 INFECTIOUS DISEASES

### 6.1 Bacterial Meningitis

#### Theory

1. Acute Bacterial Meningitis is a life threatening emergency. The overall mortality is about 18% however this is raised at the extremes of age and in the immunocompromised.
2. The presentation may include a severe generalised headache more prominent over the occiput and worse with any manoeuvre that increases intracranial pressure. Other signs of meningeal irritation include photophobia and neck stiffness. Vomiting may be a prominent feature. Raised intracranial pressure may result in focal neurological signs, seizures, delirium and papilloedema.
  - Note: Lumbar punctures must not be performed where signs of raised intracranial pressure, focal neurological signs or a bleeding diathesis exist.
3. Patients with meningitis may be divided into two groups on the basis of presentation.
  - a) Acute presentation – Symptoms and signs have been present for less than 24 hours and are rapidly progressive. The causative organisms in these patients are usually pyogenic bacteria, and the mortality approaches 50%.
  - b) Subacute presentation – Symptoms and signs have been present for 1-7 days. Meningitis in this group of patients may be due to bacteria, viruses, or fungi, and the death rate in cases due to bacterial infection is much lower.

#### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. These flights would usually be doctor accompanied and priority 1 or 2.
2. Assess the airway. Patients may have an unprotected airway or hypoventilation from a depressed central nervous system and require intubation and ventilation.
3. Apply supplemental oxygen and monitor oxygenation (oximetry and ABGs).
4. Apply full cardiac monitoring. Note risk of bradycardia and other dysrhythmias with raised intracranial pressure.
5. Ensure IV access and normovolaemia. If hypovolaemic, resuscitate with normal saline. Check sodium, if low consider syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH). (These patients may require fluid restriction to 2/3 maintenance).
6. Ensure normoglycaemia.
7. Attempt to gain blood cultures if possible but do not delay therapy if facility for this doesn't exist.
8. Administer empirical antimicrobial therapy based on age and likely pathogens.
  - a) Under 3 months of age: Gram negatives, *Group B streptococci*, *Staphylococci* and *Listeria*
    - amoxicillin 50mg /kg IV 6 hourly plus
    - cefotaxime 50mg / kg IV 6 hourly (ceftriaxone if unavailable)
  - b) Over 3 months of age: *Strep. pneumonia*, *Neisseria meningitides*, *Staphylococci*, (*Haemophilus influenzae* now uncommon since immunisation)
    - dexamethasone 10mg IV (0.15mg /kg IV) prior antibiotics then 6 hourly
    - cefotaxime 2g IV (50mg / kg IV) 6 hourly or ceftriaxone 2g IV (50mg / kg IV) 12 hourly

**Plus**

- vancomycin 1.5g slow IV infusion (30mg / kg slow IV infusion) 12 hourly **if** Gram positive diplococci or pneumococcal assay on CSF or concurrent otitis media, sinusitis, recent treatment with a  $\beta$ -lactam, or if viral or meningococcal infection unlikely.
    - i. Immunosuppressed and elderly: *Listeria*
      - Add benzylpenicillin 2.4g IV (60mg/kg IV) 4 hourly.
    - ii. Severe penicillin or cephalosporin allergy:
      - vancomycin 1.5g slow infusion IV (30mg/kg slow infusion IV) 12 hourly **Plus**
      - ciprofloxacin\* 400mg IV (10mg /kg IV) 6 hourly
- Or**
- moxifloxacin\* 400mg IV (10mg / kg IV) daily

\* Not carried by RFDS.

**Special Notes**

1. Treat seizures aggressively with anticonvulsants.
2. If *Neisseria meningitides* confirmed contacts will need antibiotic prophylaxis. This is a notifiable disease.
  - a) Only medical or nursing staff who have performed or attempted mouth to mouth resuscitation or intubation or are in prolonged close contact with the infected patient require prophylaxis.

**Medical Chest Items**

Ceftriaxone 2g powder for reconstitution (Item 402), water for injection 5mL (Item 168), phenoxymethylpenicillin powder for oral suspension 250mg/5mL (Item 401), phenoxymethylpenicillin tablets 500mg (Item 170), amoxycillin oral suspension 250mg / 5mL (Item 130), amoxycillin capsules 500mg (Item 172), cephalexin oral suspension 250mg/ 5mL (Item 174), cephalexin capsules 500mg (Item 175).

**References**

Sanders C, Ho M. Current Emergency Diagnosis and Treatment 4<sup>th</sup> Ed. Appleton and Lange, 1992

Fauci A, Braunwald E, Kasper D, et al. Harrison's Principles of Medicine 14<sup>th</sup> Edition CD – ROM Version 1.2 McGraw Hill.

Watson C et al. Guidelines for control of meningococcal disease in Australia. NHMRC, AGPS 1996

McPhee S, Papadakis M, Tierney L. Current Medical Diagnosis and Treatment. 47<sup>th</sup> ed. Lange. 2007

Antibiotic drug guidelines [revised 2010 Jun]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.

## 6.2 Meningococcal Infection

### Theory

1. *Neisseria meningitides* is a gram negative diplococcus with many sero-groups, however 90% of disease is caused by sero-groups A,B or C. Transmission is via respiratory droplets. Up to 25% of the community are asymptomatic carriers. Risk factors include overcrowding, smoking, recent upper respiratory tract infection and complement deficiencies.
2. Meningococcal sepsis can occur with or without meningitis.
3. Features of systemic sepsis include:
  - Rapidly deteriorating (death can occur in under 2 hours) influenza like presentation with fever and myalgia.
  - Rash: Characteristic purpuric (although sometimes petechial) lesions on trunk and limbs that may coalesce to large ecchymoses.
  - Respiratory features: tachypnoea, hypoxia, pulmonary oedema and ARDS.
  - Cardiovascular collapse, distributive shock.
  - Neurological features: agitation, confusion, reduced level of consciousness.
  - Renal complications: Acute renal failure, metabolic acidosis
  - GIT: diarrhoea, vomiting
  - DIC
  - Septic arthritides

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Most if not all flights for suspected meningococcal infection should be priority 1 doctor accompanied.
2. When suspected empirical therapy should commence immediately, do not wait for a definitive diagnosis, the patient is likely to be dead by then.
3. In a pre-hospital setting:
  - benzylpenicillin < 3yrs 300mg IV or IM\*  
1-9yrs 600mg IV or IM\*  
>9 yrs 1.2g IV or IM\*

\*Preferably IV as shock may prevent absorption via the intramuscular route.
4. In remote setting such as nursing post or if allergic to Penicillin:
  - ceftriaxone 2g (50mg/kg) 12 hourly or 4g daily
5. In hospital setting:
  - ceftriaxone 2g (50mg/kg) 12 hourly or cefotaxime 2g (50mg/kg) 6 hourly
  - If penicillin allergy; ciprofloxacin 400mg (10mg/kg) 12 hourly
6. Manage shock aggressively:
  - 2 x large bore peripheral cannulae or intra-osseous needle
  - Fluid boluses (note > than 30mL/kg pulmonary oedema is common)
  - Inotrope support very commonly required.

- Early goal directed treatment (See [Severe Sepsis](#)) aim for: CVP 8-12mmHg), MAP  $\geq$  65mmHg, Urine output  $\geq$  0.5mL /kg/hour. (Central venous  $SO_2 \geq 70\%$ , however this cannot be measure using our equipment). Adequate Hb.
7. Seek specialist advice regarding steroids, DVT prophylaxis, and GIT prophylaxis.
  8. Maintain normoglycaemia and keep electrolytes within normal limits.

### **Special Notes**

This is a notifiable disease, confirmed contacts will need antibiotic prophylaxis, this can be arranged through public health. Prophylaxis will consist of either; ceftriaxone 250mg IM stat (if pregnant), or ciprofloxacin 500mg orally stat (adults), or rifampicin 600mg orally (adult) 5mg /kg (neonate) 10mg/kg child 12 hourly for 2 days.

Only medical or nursing staff who have performed or attempted mouth to mouth resuscitation or intubation / airway suction, or are in prolonged close contact with the infected patient require prophylaxis.

### **Medical Chest Items**

Ceftriaxone 2g powder for reconstitution (Item 402), water for injection (Item 168), phenoxymethylpenicillin tabs 500mg (Item 170), phenoxymethylpenicillin powder for oral suspension 250mg / 5mL (Item 401).

### **References**

- NHMRC. Guidelines for the control of meningococcal disease in Australia. Oct.1996.
- Bersten A, Soni N. Oh's Intensive Care Manual. 6th ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009.
- NHMRC. The Australian Immunisation Handbook. 8<sup>th</sup> Ed, 2008
- Antibiotic drug guidelines [revised 2010 Jun]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.
- Beed M, Sherman R, Mahajan R. Emergencies In Critical Care. Oxford: Oxford University Press 2007.

## 6.3 Tuberculosis

### Theory

1. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is transmitted in airborne droplet nuclei by people with pulmonary or laryngeal tuberculosis during expiratory efforts, such as coughing or sneezing. Even casual close exposure to an infection case has been known to lead to infection in a contact.
2. As a general rule persons with sputum positive for acid fast bacilli (AFB) on microscopy are considered most infectious while patients with extra-pulmonary disease are not.
3. There is no evidence to suggest that the risk of transmission of tuberculosis (TB) on aircraft is greater than in any other confined space (Including other forms of public transport) if the duration of transfer is the same. Risk of transmission seems particularly to be related to prolonged transfers (duration of flight >8 hours).

### Pre-flight and in-flight management

1. Isolation is **unnecessary** for patients with tuberculosis whose sputum is bacteriologically negative, who do not cough or who are known to be on adequate therapy (based on known or probable drug susceptibility and a clear clinical response to therapy).
2. If the patient has or is suspected to have active pulmonary disease and he/she has not been given adequate therapy, the following precautions should be observed:
  - Patient to wear a mask capable of filtering submicron particles and to use tissues to cover their mouth and nose when coughing or sneezing; the tissues should then be placed in a disposable plastic bag that can be sealed.
  - Staff and other patients to wear a mask capable of filtering submicron particles when with the patient in a confined space, e.g. inside the aircraft or road ambulance.
  - People in an immunocompromised condition or on immunosuppressive therapy should not be carried on the same aircraft.
3. In suspected cases all undiagnosed patients with cavitations in the upper lungs, or haemoptysis should be considered as infectious in the absence of sputum results.

### Special Notes

1. RFDS currently stock masks capable of filtering submicron particles. The only drawback is that to be efficient they may make breathing difficult for a sick patient. For these patients a mask with a one-way valve so that the air is only filtered when breathed out may be more suitable.
2. For the very rare occasion of transferring a person with active multi-drug resistant TB, a full hood type of respirator fitted with HEPA filter will be required for the accompanying medical staff.
3. For further information contact the Perth Chest Clinic on (08) 9325 3922.

### References

Chin J. Control of Communicable Diseases Manual. 17<sup>th</sup> ed. American Public Health Association. 2000.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta. Exposure of Passengers and Flight Crew to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* on Commercial Aircraft, 1992-1995. Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Review. March 03, 1995 / 44(08);137-140.

Centre for Disease Control, Atlanta. *Tuberculosis Risk on Aircraft* [http://www.cdc.gov/travel/tb\\_risk.html](http://www.cdc.gov/travel/tb_risk.html)

Pang, Dr Shing. Perth Chest Clinic – personal communication, March 2000.

## 6.4 Melioidosis

### Theory

1. Melioidosis results from infection with the soil and water bacterium *Burkholderia pseudomallei*, usually by transmission through bare feet, although inhalation of aerosolised bacteria can occur and transmission through contaminated water supplies. Most cases occur in the “Wet Season” and the endemic regions are South East Asia and Northern Australia. Although a rare disease, it has a significant incidence (100 cases / year) in East Kimberley and the Northern Territory.
2. Clinical presentation depends on mode of infection, infecting dose of bacteria and host risk factors. Diabetes is the most important risk factor, followed by excessive alcohol consumption, chronic renal disease and immune suppressive therapy. The usual incubation period is 1-21 days, although latency with subsequent reactivation does occur.

### Clinical Presentation

Around half cases present with pneumonia, which can be part of a fatal septicaemia, a unilateral chest infection, or a chronic illness resembling TB. Severe cases often present as overwhelming sepsis with multiple organ abscesses. Prostatic abscess is common in males. Most of the cases we see come from remote Aboriginal communities in the Kununurra area.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. A high index of suspicion will help to diagnose Melioidosis in susceptible individuals during the “Wet Season” (November – March). Suspected cases should be moved promptly to Darwin or Perth usually as P1 or 2 doctor accompanied flights.
2. Investigations should include, where possible:
  - a) Culture of blood, sputum, urine, skin lesions and abscesses. Throat and rectal swabs for culture in Ashdown’s media (should be available in Kimberley hospitals).
  - b) CXR
  - c) CT abdomen and pelvis
3. Manage according to “Early Goal Directed Treatment of Severe Sepsis Guidelines” (See [Severe Sepsis](#)). Early antibiotic therapy, (do not wait for confirmation of diagnosis) with meropenem 1g IV (25mg/kg) 8 hourly. RFDS do not carry this routinely so it should be sourced from either local or regional hospital.
4. Advice regarding management is available from the Royal Darwin Hospital Infectious Diseases Team at RDH: (08) 8922 8888.

### References

Currie BJ, Ward L, Cheng AC (2010) the Epidemiology and Clinical Spectrum of Melioidosis: 540 Cases from the 20 year Darwin Prospective Study. PLoS Neglected Tropical Diseases 4(11): e900.doi:10.1371/journal.pntd.0000900

Cheng AC, Currie BJ. Melioidosis: epidemiology, pathophysiology, and management. Clin Microbiol Rev 2005; 18(2):383-416



## 6.5 Severe Sepsis

### Theory

1. Severe sepsis is defined as the systemic response to an infection manifested by organ dysfunction from hypoperfusion or hypotension.
2. Features of severe sepsis include fever, tachycardia, tachypnoea, elevated white cell count and altered mental state. All of these signs can be masked in neonates.
3. The pathophysiology of sepsis is complex and results from effects of circulating bacterial products, mediated by released cytokines. Cytokines (Previously known as endotoxins) are responsible for the clinically observable effects of bacteremia on the host.
4. Sepsis is a common cause of morbidity and mortality across the world. With the use of modern cancer treatment, more available invasive procedures and more immunomodulating treatments it is likely that the prevalence and incidence of sepsis will increase. Developing bacterial resistance is also a factor to consider.

### Pre-flight and in-flight management

1. Priority and need for doctor is to be assessed on an individual basis and depends on resources at referring location. Most patients with severe sepsis would be priority 1 or 2 and doctor accompanied.
2. Patients with severe sepsis need **urgent empirical antibiotic** treatment and **urgent resuscitation** to provide optimal organ perfusion and oxygenation.
3. Initial management of a suspected severe sepsis or septic shock:
  - Administer oxygen. Intubation and ventilation may be necessary to maintain adequate gas exchange. Aim to keep inspiratory plateau pressures <30mmHg in ventilated patients.
  - Establish good IV access, and if possible two sets of blood cultures and other appropriate cultures, recommended but should not delay giving empirical antibiotics.
  - Administer appropriate empirical antibiotics ideally within the first hour.
  - Administer IV fluid challenges of 500mL-1000mL Crystalloid or 300mL-500mL Colloid (child 10-20mL/kg) if the patient is hypotensive or if there are other signs of organ hypoperfusion such as oliguria, elevated lactate (>4mmol/l) or altered conscious state.
  - **If hypotension does not respond to IV fluid resuscitation (aim CVP 8-12, 12 if mechanically ventilated) commence vasopressor infusion** (usually Noradrenaline), preferably via a central line. Aim for a SBP>90mmHg or MAP > 65mmHg but remember that many of our patients require a higher MAP for adequate organ perfusion. Central line not mandatory but helpful.
  - A urine output of over 0.5mL/kg/hour indicates adequate renal perfusion and can be used together with mental status, ABG and lactate to monitor progress.
  - Consider packed cell transfusion if Hb <7.0g/dL.
  - The use of corticosteroids remains controversial but may be indicated in patients unresponsive to fluid challenges and vasopressors.
  - Maintain adequate glycaemic control.

**Empirical treatment, no obvious source:**

1. Immunocompetent adult: dicloxacillin or flucloxacillin 2g 6 hourly PLUS gentamicin 7mg/kg (ideal body wt) IV one dose, then adjust subsequent dose for renal function.
2. Immunocompetent adult with immediate hypersensitivity to penicillin: vancomycin 30mg/kg up to 1.5g 12 hourly PLUS gentamicin 7mg/kg IV one dose.
3. If meningococcal infection is suspected, add benzylpenicillin 60mg/kg up to 2.4g IV.
4. Immunocompetent adult where high prevalence of community-acquired MRSA or health care-associated MRSA, or known MRSA carrier of either type: vancomycin 30mg/kg up to 1.5g PLUS gentamicin 7mg/kg IV one dose.
5. Immunocompetent child under 6 months: amoxy/ampicillin 50mg/kg IV 6 hourly PLUS cefotaxime 50mg/kg IV 6 hourly OR ceftriaxone 50mg/kg up to 2g 12 hourly.
6. Immunocompetent child over 6 months: dicloxacillin or flucloxacillin 50 mg/kg up to 2 g 6 hourly PLUS cefotaxime 50mg/kg up to 2 g IV 6 hourly OR ceftriaxone 50mg/kg up to 2g 12 hourly.
7. Neutropenic and immunosuppressed patients: ceftazidime 2g (child 50 mg/kg) 8 hourly or OR piperacillin + tazobactam 4+0.5g (child 100+12.5mg/kg up to 4+0.5g) IV 8 hourly.

Consider melioidosis in the north of WA if risk factors exist: diabetes, excessive alcohol intake, chronic lung or renal disease, kava use, other (immune suppression / steroids, rheumatic heart disease, malignancy). Cover with meropenem 25mg/kg up to 1g IV. (See [Melioidosis](#))

Table 5. Algorithm - Is this severe sepsis?

**IS THIS SEVERE SEPSIS?**

| Does patient have ≥ 2 of these SIRS* Criteria?   |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
|--|-------------------|---------------------------------------|--|--|-----------------------------|
| HR>90  | RR>20             | WBC <4 or >12                         | Temp <36 or >38  | Acutely altered mental status  | BSL >6.6 in non diabetic    |
| <div>↓</div>   |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
| Is there a likely source of infection?   |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
| Clinical evidence  |                   |                                       | Cultures taken   |  |                             |
| <div>↓</div>   |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
| Have “sepsis 6” been done (within 1 hour)?   |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
| 1. Give O <sub>2</sub>   | 2. Blood cultures | 3. Lactate                            | 4. IV fluid bolus  | 5. Antibiotics   | 6. IDC with hourly measures |
| <div>↓</div>   |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
| Reassess after “sepsis 6 (as above)”   |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
| HR   | BP                | Lactate                               | RR   | SpO <sub>2</sub> (FiO <sub>2</sub> )   | BSL                         |
| <div>↓</div>   |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
| This is severe sepsis if:  |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
| MAP <65mmHg or SBP <90mmHg   |                   | Lactate >2                            |  | End organ dysfunction:<br>Cr>177, BR>34, Plat<100, APTT>60 or INR>1.5<br><br>O <sub>2</sub> required to maintain SaO <sub>2</sub> >90%<br><br>U.O. <0.5mL/kg for 2 hours |                             |
| Supportive therapy   |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
| Ventilation may be required for:<br>Increased work of breathing (eg, tachypnoea)<br>Lung injury ie, ARDS<br>Reduced level of consciousness |                   |                                       | Inotrope support for:<br>Persistent MAP <65mmHg or SBP<90mmHg despite 2 boluses fluid (20mL/kg in child, 2 L in adult) |  |                             |
| <div>↓</div>   |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
| Critical care (HDU or ICU) admission is needed if:   |                   |                                       |  |  |                             |
| Cardiorespiratory support (eg. vasopressors) required  |                   | SBP<90 mmHg or MAP <65mmHg post bolus |  | Lactate >4 post bolus  |                             |

\*SIRS – Systemic Inflammatory Response Syndrome

**References**

Antibiotic drug guidelines [revised 2010 Jun]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.

Dellinger R, Levy M, Carlet J, et al. Surviving Sepsis Campaign: International guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock: 2008. *Crit Care Med.* 2008;36:296-327.

## 7 MENTAL HEALTH

### 7.1 Transfer of Mental Health Patients

#### *Theory*

1. Mental Health patient refers to patients who are being transferred principally because of an acute psychiatric disorder. This does not include patients being carried for other medical or surgical conditions who have an incidental psychiatric condition, which is well controlled.
2. Other patients acutely affected by alcohol, illicit drugs or withdrawal symptoms, or who appear to pose a threat to the safety of a flight should be managed in accordance with these guidelines also, although they are not covered by the Mental Health Act.
3. Our CASA-approved Operations Manual requires us to ensure the safety of passengers and crew during flight. Conditions are imposed on the carriage of patients at risk of becoming disturbed or violent in flight.
4. In the event of an in-flight emergency, there are limited resources on-board an aircraft. This must be borne in mind despite the principles of using the 'least restrictive options' for patients outlined in the Mental Health Act 2014.
5. The term 'at risk' is used to refer to those patients judged to be at risk of behavioural disturbance or violence during flight.
6. Retrieval staff, as registered health professionals, are expected to be familiar with the Mental Health Act and associated Regulations and manage patients accordingly.

#### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

##### **1. Suitable for aeromedical transport**

Does the patient warrant aeromedical transport; that is, requires a stretcher and clinical care during transport? In most cases only patients referred under the Act, who cannot travel by any other public or private means, are accepted. Most patients are voluntary but 'referred for examination by a psychiatrist' (with the expectation of being made involuntary). Some transfers between authorised hospitals may be involuntary detained patients. The mental health forms are covered later; the key decisions are to evaluate suitability for air transport and how they should be managed clinically.

##### **2. Flight priority**

Generally, patients are all classed as Priority 3 (routine inter-hospital transfer). However, in smaller hospitals, nursing posts and remote communities that priority may be upgraded at the RFDS doctor's discretion. Patients who are known to be unstable or violent, or who have been awaiting transfer for more than 24 hours should be routinely re-assessed. There is no simple definitive treatment for acute mental illness, so the priority must consider the clinical risks of self-harm and complications of excessive sedation, (not just that they are causing a disturbance in the referring location), and ranked against the urgency of patients with serious illness or injury for whom definitive treatment is available. Some patients may be upgraded to a Priority 2 if appropriate.

##### **3. 'At risk' status**

The assessing RFDS doctor will determine if the patient is 'at risk' in conjunction with the referring doctor / mental health practitioner. Factors to be considered include past history, overt behavioural disturbance, agitation, confusion and delusional ideation. Most patients with major affective disorders (especially schizophrenia and bipolar affective disorder) should be considered at risk.

- a) If **not** 'at risk' of in-flight behavioural disturbance, restraint (chemical or physical) is inappropriate and the patient does **not** require an escort other than a flight nurse. Alternative means of transport (e.g. routine public transport) should be considered for these patients.
- b) If 'at risk' the patient requires sedation, restraint and an additional escort. Only one such patient may be carried on an aircraft at any one time.

#### 4. Sedation (chemical restraint)

**RASS** Sedation should be targeted to a predefined endpoint that ensures both compliance and airway security. We have adopted the Richmond Agitation and Sedation Scale (RASS). The goal of treatment should be a score of -1 to 0. This should be determined at the time of referral for transport and the RASS documented during flight at regular intervals. (See 7.3 Richmond Agitation-Sedation Scale).

**Intravenous access** - Intravenous access (cannula and injection port) must be in place and well secured prior to transport (patients at risk of pulling out cannulae ought to have two cannulae).

**Drugs** Our preferred regime for sedation is midazolam 2.5 - 5mg IV or diazepam 2.5 - 5mg IV supplemented with haloperidol 5mg IV, titrated against the clinical response.

Encourage adequate use of pre-flight antipsychotics rather than over reliance on benzodiazepines. For example, olanzapine 5mg p.o. 6 hourly, or zuclopenthixol acetate (Clopixol Accuphase) 50-150mg IM every 2-3 days.

Anaesthetic agents such as ketamine may be used at the discretion of an accompanying doctor. (See 7.2 Ketamine for management of acutely agitated patients).

**Monitoring** All patients should have a full set of observations completed at regular intervals during transport, including a temperature at acceptance and discharge.

ECG monitoring should be attempted, particularly for patients receiving large doses of sedation. Patients with mental illness may have other underlying medical conditions.

Careful airway management must be observed, and the patient should have regular SpO<sub>2</sub> recorded. If heavily sedated, capnometry should be used. (See technique in 7.4 Severe behavioural disturbance in paediatric patients).

#### 5. Physical restraint

Mechanical bodily restraint must be authorised in writing. Orders by an RFDS doctor on a preflight assessment form meet this requirement.

Restraints are not to be removed, even in part, during flight.

#### 6. Escorts

- Patients deemed 'at risk' aeromedically will have a suitable escort in addition to a flight nurse.
- Under the Mental Health Act, patients on a Transport Order (Form 4A, 4B) must be accompanied by a Transport Officer. A Police Officer may be used if a Transport Officer is not available. These meet our requirement for an escort.
- 'At risk' patients not on a Transport Order require an alternative suitable escort provided by the referring location e.g. a community Mental Health Practitioner, Hospital Nurse, Hospital Orderly, or a relative of the patient.
- A doctor escort should be considered when there are significant clinical risk factors such as violent behaviour, forensic history, illicit drug use, high sedation

requirement or use of exceptional sedation regimes (infusions and anaesthetic agents).

## **7. Carriage of psychiatric patients at night**

Mentally disturbed patients are not normally carried at night due to limited resources and for safety reasons (risks of disorientation and lack of landing options in an emergency). Many patients would benefit from early sedation and an opportunity to reduce their arousal prior to transfer the next day. In exceptional circumstances, particularly where resources at the referring location are limited, a night flight may be authorised by the assessing RFDS doctor.

## **8. Intubation of mental patients for transport purposes**

*Airway protection* This is reserved for patients who are either not controllable with adequate, appropriate medication and whose sedation requirements put the security of their airway at risk, or have already aspirated as a result of heavy or prolonged sedation. Intubation and ventilation should be implemented at the referring hospital after consultation with the assessing RFDS doctor, and with due reference to the probable flight arrival time. It should not be delayed until the RFDS plane arrives unless at a remote site with no doctor.

*Not routine* Giving an anaesthetic to a non-consenting patient is not an 'RFDS requirement' and should be regarded as a last resort. All ventilated cases must be notified as a Clinical Incident in order for management to inform the Chief Psychiatrist. Intubated patients do not require a police escort. Implementation of the RFDS ketamine guideline should reduce the incidence further.

*Register of difficult cases* Recurrent difficult mental health patients should be notified to the SMO or Clinical Coordinator for inclusion in the register maintained for this purpose.

## **9. Other interventions**

*Urinary catheterisation* Urinary catheterisation may be necessary if the patient is heavily sedated and restrained, the flight time is longer than four hours and it will not be possible to toilet the patient during flight. This should be explained and performed with consent at the referring hospital prior to flight. It can be perceived as assault, or arouse a docile patient. This should be discussed between the referring and transporting doctors in advance.

*Nicotine patches.* These may prove invaluable in reducing agitation in smokers.

## **10. Forms**

This can be complex and advice should be sought by escalating within the RFDS to a Clinical Coordinator, Director of Medical Services, or Office of the Chief Psychiatrist.

In general, most patients will be on some of the following:

Form 1A - Referral (valid 72 hrs) with Attachment (confidential). There may also be a

Form 1B - Variation of referral (changing place of examination, extending the time limit another 72 hrs)

Form 3A - Detention order (valid 24 hrs), and one or more of

Form 3B - Continuation of detention (24 hrs each)

Form 4A - Transport order (valid 72 hrs) and may also be a

Form 4B - Extension of Transport order (another 72 hrs)

Form 4C - Transfer order is used for transfer between authorized hospitals

Form 9A - Record of emergency psychiatric treatment (if used)

### ***Special Notes***

1. These guidelines relate to our aeromedical management. Clinical staff should be familiar with the Mental Health Act 2014 and relevant Regulations.
2. A summary of all the Mental Health Act 2014 forms and copies of relevant ones, appear in the following pages. A full set is maintained on the intranet, suitable for printing.
3. If a patient is classified as not 'at risk', yet appears to the RFDS crew on arrival as being 'at risk', then the duty RFDS doctor should be contacted and the procedures for 'at risk' patients followed.
4. An OCP Help Desk for Clinicians will operate 24 hours on **08-9222 4217**
5. Emergency Psychiatric Treatment forms are faxed to **08-92224497**

### ***Medical Chest Items***


Diazepam 10mg ampoules (Item 98), diazepam 2mg tabs (Item 191)

### ***References***

Clinicians' Practice Guide to the Mental Health Act 2014, Office of the Chief Psychiatrist, Health Department of Western Australia. (Available on intranet and OCP website).

WA Country Health Service. Sedation for Mental Health Patients Awaiting RFDS Transfer from Remote Regions Guideline. Effective: 18 November 2010.


Mental Health Act 2014, Government of Western Australia. (Available on intranet).

|   |                                    |      |
|---|------------------------------------|------|
| <br><b>CHIEF PSYCHIATRIST<br/>OF<br/>WESTERN AUSTRALIA</b><br><br><b>WA MENTAL HEALTH<br/>ACT 2014</b>   | Please use ID label or block print |      |
|   | SURNAME                            | UMRN |
|   | GIVEN NAMES                        | CMHI |
|   | BIRTHDATE                          | SEX  |
|   | ADDRESS                            |      |
| SECTIONS: 26, 31, 36, 37, 41, 42, 43  |                                    |      |
| <b>FORM 1A - REFERRAL FOR EXAMINATION BY PSYCHIATRIST</b>   |                                    |      |
| <b>Assessment completed:</b> _____ <b>Date:</b> DD/MM/YY <b>Time:</b> HH:MM<br><b>Place:</b> _____ (If AV used, place of assessment is referred person's location.)<br><input type="checkbox"/> Metro area <input type="checkbox"/> Non-metro area   (For non-metro there is possibility of extending referral - see Form 1B.)  |                                    |      |
| <b>Basis on which it is suspected that the person needs an involuntary treatment order:</b><br>Distinguish whether information obtained from referred person, their medical record or another person.<br>Refer to Form 1A Attachment if required.   |                                    |      |
|   |                                    |      |
| <b>Referred person is to be examined at:</b> _____<br><input type="checkbox"/> Authorised hospital <input type="checkbox"/> Other place   |                                    |      |
| I certify that I have assessed the person being referred and, having regard to the criteria in section 25 of the <i>Mental Health Act 2014</i> (see overleaf), reasonably suspect that the person: is in need of an involuntary treatment order; or is on a community treatment order and is in need of an inpatient treatment order.   |                                    |      |
| <b>Name of referring practitioner:</b> _____  |                                    |      |
| <b>Qualifications:</b> _____ <b>Signature:</b> _____<br><input type="checkbox"/> Medical practitioner <input type="checkbox"/> AMHP   |                                    |      |
| <b>Date and time referral made:</b> _____ <b>Date:</b> DD/MM/YY <b>Time:</b> HH:MM<br>Must be within 48 hours of (or if referring voluntary inpatient at authorised hospital, immediately after) assessment.  |                                    |      |
| <b>Date and time referral will expire:</b> _____ <b>Date:</b> DD/MM/YY <b>Time:</b> HH:MM<br>72 hours after referral made. This may be extended under Form 1B.  |                                    |      |
| <b>REVOCATION OF REFERRAL (If required) <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 0 5px;">NE</span></b><br>Reason for revoking referral:<br><input type="checkbox"/> I am satisfied that the referred person is no longer in need of an involuntary treatment order.<br>Is the referral being revoked by the practitioner who made the referral?: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No<br>If No, practitioner who made referral must be consulted. Provide details of the consultation, or, if the referring practitioner could not be contacted, a record of the efforts to do so:<br><div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 30px; margin-top: 5px;"></div> |                                    |      |
| <b>Name of revoking practitioner:</b> _____ <b>Date:</b> DD/MM/YY <b>Time:</b> HH:MM  |                                    |      |
| <b>Qualifications:</b> _____ <b>Signature:</b> _____<br><input type="checkbox"/> Medical practitioner <input type="checkbox"/> AMHP   |                                    |      |
| <b>Receival at place of examination:</b><br><b>Date:</b> DD/MM/YY <b>Time:</b> HH:MM <b>Signature:</b> _____  |                                    |      |

FORM 1A - REFERRAL FOR EXAMINATION BY PSYCHIATRIST




| Notes: Form 1A – Referral for examination by psychiatrist  |
|--|
| <p><b>When to use this form:</b><br/>A medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner may refer a person (including a voluntary inpatient – s36) for an examination conducted by a psychiatrist if, having regard to the criteria specified in section 25, the practitioner reasonably suspects that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the person is in need of an involuntary treatment order; or</li> <li>if the person is under a community treatment order – the person is in need of an inpatient treatment order (s26(1)).</li> </ul> <p>If the referred person needs to be detained in order to be taken to the place of examination see <i>Form 3A – Detention Order</i>. If the referred person is in need of a transport order to be taken to the place of examination see <i>Form 4A – Transport Order</i>.</p>  |
| <p><b>Section 25 criteria for an involuntary treatment order:</b><br/>Criteria for an inpatient treatment order (<u>all</u> of the requirements must be met) (s25(1)):</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the person has a mental illness requiring treatment;</li> <li>because of the mental illness there is a significant risk to the health or safety of the person or to the safety of another person, or a significant risk of serious harm to the person or to another person;</li> <li>the person does not demonstrate the capacity to make a decision about provision of treatment to himself or herself (see Part 5 of Act for consideration of capacity matters);</li> <li>treatment in the community <u>cannot</u> reasonably be provided to the person; and</li> <li>there is no alternative that would be less restrictive to the person's freedom of choice and movement.</li> </ol> <p>Criteria for a community treatment order (<u>all</u> of the requirements must be met) (s25(2)):</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the person has a mental illness requiring treatment;</li> <li>because of the mental illness there is a significant risk to the health or safety of the person or to the safety of another person, or a significant risk of serious harm to the person or to another person, or a significant risk of the person suffering serious physical or mental deterioration;</li> <li>the person does not demonstrate the capacity to make a decision about provision of treatment to himself or herself (see Part 5 of Act for consideration of capacity matters);</li> <li>treatment in the community <u>can</u> reasonably be provided to the person; and</li> <li>there is no alternative that would be less restrictive to the person's freedom of choice and movement.</li> </ol> |
| <p><b>Duration of order:</b><br/>A referral remains in force for 72 hours from the time that the referral is made unless:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>it is a referral made in a non-metropolitan area and is extended (Form 1B – Variation of referral) (s45); or</li> <li>the referral is revoked (see front of form) (s31, 37).</li> </ul>   |
| <p><b>Place of examination:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the referred person is a voluntary inpatient in an authorised hospital, the place of examination must be the authorised hospital in which the person is an inpatient (s36).</li> <li>In all other cases the place of examination may be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>an authorised hospital (s26(2)); or</li> <li>a place that is not an authorised hospital if it is an appropriate place to conduct the examination having regard to the Chief Psychiatrist's guidelines. In this case, the practitioner must make any arrangements that are necessary to enable the examination to be conducted at that place (s26(3)).</li> </ul> </li> <li>The place of examination may be changed (Form 1B – Variation of referral).</li> </ul>   |
| <p><b>Revocation of referral:</b><br/>A medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner may make an order revoking a referral if satisfied that the person referred is no longer in need of an involuntary treatment order (s31(1), s37(1)).<br/>The practitioner cannot revoke the referral if it was made by another practitioner unless the practitioner has consulted the other practitioner about whether or not to revoke the referral, or despite reasonable efforts to do so, the other practitioner cannot be contacted (s31(2), s37(2)).</p> <p><b>NE</b> If the referred person is being detained under a <i>Form 3A – Detention Order</i> the person must be released (s31(6)). The release of a person following the revocation of a referral is a <b>Notifiable Event</b> which means, where possible, at least one personal support person must be notified that the person has been released.</p>  |
| <p><b>Checklist of Mental Health Act 2014 requirements related to this form:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Provide the referred person with the information in this referral (you may wish to do this by giving the referred person a copy of this form).</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> File the referral on the person's medical record.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Provide the referred person and at least one personal support person with an explanation of the referred person's rights as soon as practicable.</li> </ul> <p><b>If referral is revoked:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> <b>NE</b> If the person was subject to a <i>Form 3A – Detention order</i>, the person must be released. The practitioner revoking the referral must inform at least one personal support person of the release of the person, as soon as practicable.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> If the person was subject to a <i>Form 4A – Transport order</i>, the practitioner revoking the referral must notify the police or transport officer carrying out the transport order and make a record of the advice on the person's medical record.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> File the form with the revocation section completed on the referred person's medical record.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Give a copy of the form with the revocation section completed to the referred person as soon as practicable.</li> </ul>  |
| <p><b>Information for place where person will be received for examination:</b><br/>Is there an 'Attachment to Form 1A' completed? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No.<br/>If yes, ensure receiving place gets a copy of the Attachment along with the Form 1A.</p>   |

|  |                                    |      |
|--|------------------------------------|------|
|  <p><b>CHIEF PSYCHIATRIST<br/>OF<br/>WESTERN AUSTRALIA</b></p> <p>WA MENTAL HEALTH<br/>ACT 2014</p> <p>SECTIONS: 26, 36, 41, 42, 43</p>   | Please use ID label or block print |      |
|  | SURNAME                            | UMRN |
|  | GIVEN NAMES                        | CMHI |
|  | BIRTHDATE                          | SEX  |
|  | ADDRESS                            |      |
| <p align="center"><b>ATTACHMENT TO FORM 1A – INFORMATION PROVIDED BY ANOTHER PERSON IN<br/>CONFIDENCE</b></p>  |                                    |      |
| <p>This attachment is supplementary to <i>Form 1A - Referral</i> and can only be completed in addition to a Form 1A.</p> <p>Form 1A must include the basis on which the practitioner suspects that the referred person is in need of an involuntary treatment order. This may include information communicated to the practitioner by another person. If another person communicated information on the condition that it must <u>not</u> be provided to the referred person, this information must be captured in this attachment. This attachment and the information within it must <u>never</u> be provided to the referred person.</p> <p><b>Basis on which it is suspected the person is in need of an involuntary treatment order – information communicated to referring practitioner by another person on condition that it must not be provided to the referred person:</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 250px; width: 100%;"></div> |                                    |      |
| <p>Name of referring practitioner: _____</p> <p>Signature of referring practitioner: _____</p> <p align="right">Date: DD/MM/YY</p> <p align="center"><b>THIS ATTACHMENT MUST <u>NEVER</u> BE GIVEN TO THE REFERRED PERSON</b></p>  |                                    |      |

ATTACHMENT TO FORM 1A REFERRAL – INFORMATION  
PROVIDED BY ANOTHER PERSON IN CONFIDENCE



|  |                                    |             |
|--|------------------------------------|-------------|
| <br><b>CHIEF PSYCHIATRIST<br/>OF<br/>WESTERN AUSTRALIA</b><br><br>WA MENTAL HEALTH<br>ACT 2014  | Please use ID label or block print |             |
|  | <b>SURNAME</b>                     | <b>UMRN</b> |
|  | <b>GIVEN NAMES</b>                 | <b>CMHI</b> |
|  | <b>BIRTHDATE</b>                   | <b>SEX</b>  |
|  | <b>ADDRESS</b>                     |             |
| SECTIONS: 45, 46   |                                    |             |
| <b>FORM 1B – VARIATION OF REFERRAL</b>   |                                    |             |
| <p><b>CHANGING PLACE WHERE EXAMINATION BY PSYCHIATRIST WILL BE CONDUCTED</b></p> <p><b>The place where the examination was to have been conducted:</b><br/>(see Form 1A or any previous Form 1B)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Authorised hospital    <input type="checkbox"/> Other place</p> <p><b>The place where, because of this order, the examination will be conducted:</b><br/>(Cannot change the place of examination without consulting with a medical practitioner or an AMHP at the new place of examination to confirm that the person can be received and examined at the place.)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Authorised hospital    <input type="checkbox"/> Other place</p> <p>Any comments (optional):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 30px; margin-top: 5px;"></div> <p>Name of practitioner making this order: _____</p> <p>Qualifications: _____ Signature: _____</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> Medical practitioner    <input type="checkbox"/> AMHP</p> <p>Date and time this order made: _____ Date: DD/MM/YY Time: HH:MM</p> |                                    |             |
| <p><b>EXTENDING A REFERRAL MADE OUTSIDE A METROPOLITAN AREA</b></p> <p><b>Date and time referral would expire if not extended:</b> _____ Date: DD/MM/YY Time: HH:MM<br/>(Refer to Form 1A)</p> <p><b>Date and time referral will expire because of extension:</b> _____ Date: DD/MM/YY Time: HH:MM<br/>(72 hours after it would have expired if not extended. Cannot be extended further.)</p> <p><b>Reason for extending referral:</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> I am satisfied that the referral is likely to expire before the person is received into the authorised hospital or other place.</p> <p>Any comments (optional):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 30px; margin-top: 5px;"></div> <p>Name of practitioner making this order: _____</p> <p>Qualifications: _____ Signature: _____</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> Medical practitioner    <input type="checkbox"/> AMHP</p> <p>Date and time this order made: _____ Date: DD/MM/YY Time: HH:MM</p>  |                                    |             |

FORM 1B – VARIATION OF REFERRAL

## Notes: Form 1B – Variation of referral



|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Changing place of examination</b>                         | <p>A medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner may make an order changing the place specified in a referral as the place where the examination by a psychiatrist will be conducted (s46(1)).</p> <p>The practitioner cannot change the place specified in the referral unless the practitioner has consulted a medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner at the place where, if the change is made, the examination will be conducted (s46(2)).</p>  |
| <b>Extending a referral made outside a metropolitan area</b> | <p>The referral can be extended when:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the referral is made outside a metropolitan area; and</li> <li>the person responsible for taking the referred person to the place of examination forms the opinion that the referral is likely to expire before the referred person is received into the hospital or other place; and</li> <li>the person responsible for taking the referred person to the place of examination orally requests an extension of the referral from: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the practitioner who made the referral; or</li> <li>if the practitioner who made the referral is not reasonably available, another medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner in the same place; or</li> <li>if neither of the above are reasonably available, another medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner;</li> </ol> <p>or</p> <p>if none of the above are reasonably available, then the person responsible may extend the referral him/herself if he/she is a medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner.</p> </li> <li>If the practitioner is satisfied that the referral is likely to expire before the person is received into the authorised hospital or other place then he/she can extend the referral by completing this form (s45).</li> </ol> <p><b>Duration of order:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The referral can be extended under this order for a further period of 72 hours from the time when the 72-hour period for which the referral is valid ends (s45).</li> <li>The referral cannot be extended more than once (s45).</li> <li>If there is a <i>Form 4A – Transport order</i> in place, the transport order is automatically extended until the referral expires (s151).</li> </ul> |

**Checklist of *Mental Health Act 2014* requirements related to this form:**

- ☐ Give the referred person a copy of this form as soon as practicable.
- ☐ File this form on the referred person's medical record.

**Additionally, if place of examination is changed:**

- ☐ Advise the person responsible for taking the referred person to the place of examination of the change.

|   |                                    |                     |
|---|------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <br><b>CHIEF PSYCHIATRIST<br/>OF<br/>WESTERN AUSTRALIA</b><br><br>WA MENTAL HEALTH<br>ACT 2014   | Please use ID label or block print |                     |
|   | <small>SURNAME</small>             | <small>UMRN</small> |
|   | <small>GIVEN NAMES</small>         | <small>CMHI</small> |
|   | <small>BIRTHDATE</small>           | <small>SEX</small>  |
|   | <small>ADDRESS</small>             |                     |
| SECTION: 28   |                                    |                     |
| <b>FORM 3A – DETENTION ORDER </b>  |                                    |                     |
| <p><b>Reason for ordering detention:</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> I am satisfied that the person needs to be detained in order to be taken to the hospital or other place.</p> <p><b>Any comments (optional):</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 50px; margin-top: 5px;"></div><br><br><br><p><b>Name of practitioner making this order:</b> _____</p> <p><b>Qualifications of practitioner:</b> _____</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><input type="checkbox"/> Medical Practitioner    <input type="checkbox"/> AMHP</p> <p><b>Signature of practitioner making this order:</b> _____</p><br><br><br><div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <p><b>Date and time detention order made:</b></p> <p>Date: <span style="color: grey;">DD/MM/YY</span> Time: <span style="color: grey;">HH:MM</span></p> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <p><b>Date and time detention order expires:</b></p> <p>Date: <span style="color: grey;">DD/MM/YY</span> Time: <span style="color: grey;">HH:MM</span><br/>(Up to 24 hours from the time that detention order is made)</p> </div> |                                    |                     |

FORM 3A – DETENTION ORDER

### Notes: Form 3A – Detention Order

#### When to use this form

When a referred person is on a *Form 1A – Referral for examination by psychiatrist* and the medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner is satisfied that a referred person needs to be detained in order to enable the person to be taken to the authorised hospital or other place for an examination by a psychiatrist, the practitioner can make a detention order under this form (s28).

**NE** This is a **Notifiable Event** which means, where possible, at least one personal support person must be notified of the making of this order.

#### Duration

- A person can be detained under this order until the time when the order expires, which can be up to 24 hours from the time that the order is made (s28(1)).
- Detention under this order can be continued by a *Form 3B – Continuation of Detention*, for a further 24 hours from the end of the detention period under this form. Form 3B can be used to continue detention multiple times however a person cannot be detained for a total of more than:
  - 72 hours from the time that detention under this form commenced; or
  - 144 hours from the time that detention under this form commenced if the referral was made outside the metropolitan area (s28(3)).
- The person cannot continue to be detained if, by the end of the detention period:
  - the person has not been taken to the place of examination by a psychiatrist; and
  - an order continuing the detention (Form 3B) has not been made; and
  - the person has not been apprehended under a transport order (s28(10)).
- The person cannot continue to be detained if the referral expires before the person arrives at the place of examination by a psychiatrist (s28(11)).

#### Principles of detention

The following principles apply in relation to the detention of a person:

- the person must be detained for as brief a period as practicable;
- the degree of any force used to detain the person must be the minimum that is required to be used for that purpose;
- while the person is detained —
  - there must be the least possible restriction on the person's freedom of choice and movement consistent with the person's detention; and
  - the person is entitled to reasonable privacy consistent with the person's detention; and
  - the person must be treated with dignity and respect (s170).


#### Related forms

- A *Form 4A – Transport order* can be made to take the person to the place of examination / the hospital.

#### Checklist of *Mental Health Act 2014* requirements related to this form:

#### Notes

- ☐ **NE** Notify at least one personal support person that this order has been made, as soon as practicable.
- ☐ Give the referred person a copy of this form as soon as practicable.
- ☐ File this form on the referred person's medical record.
- ☐ Ensure that the person has the opportunity and means to contact any personal support person, any health professional currently providing treatment to the person and the Mental Health Advocacy Service as soon as practicable and at all reasonable times while the person is detained.

|   |                                    |      |
|---|------------------------------------|------|
| <br><b>CHIEF PSYCHIATRIST<br/>OF<br/>WESTERN AUSTRALIA</b><br><br>WA MENTAL HEALTH<br>ACT 2014   | Please use ID label or block print |      |
|   | SURNAME                            | UMRN |
|   | GIVEN NAMES                        | CMHI |
|   | BIRTHDATE                          | SEX  |
|   | ADDRESS                            |      |
| SECTIONS: 28, 59, 62  |                                    |      |
| <b>FORM 3B – CONTINUATION OF DETENTION</b>  |                                    |      |
| <p><b>Circumstances of order:</b></p> <p>Detention of a referred person prior to the person being taken to the place of examination:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Continuation of detention under <i>Form 3A – Detention Order</i><br/>         May be up to a further 24 hours. Person cannot be detained for longer than a total of 72 hours (or 144 hours if referral was made outside of metro area).</p> <p>Detention of a person at a place that is NOT an authorised hospital prior to examination by a psychiatrist:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Continuation of detention of a person who is received into a place <b>outside the metropolitan area to enable examination by a psychiatrist.</b><br/>         May be up to a further 48 hours from the time that 24 hours have passed since the person was received at the place (person cannot be detained for longer than 72 hours before examined by a psychiatrist).</p> <p>Detention of a person at a place that is NOT an authorised hospital <b>following</b> an examination by a psychiatrist:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Continuation of detention to enable the person placed on an '<i>inpatient treatment order in a general hospital</i>' (Form 6B) to be taken to the general hospital<br/>         May be up to 24 hours since the '<i>inpatient treatment order in a general hospital</i>' (Form 6B) is made.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Continuation of detention to enable a person placed on an '<i>order authorising reception and detention of person in authorised hospital</i>' (Form 3D) to be taken to the authorised hospital.<br/>         May be up to 24 hours from the time that the '<i>order authorising reception and detention in an authorised hospital</i>' (Form 3C) is made.</p> <p><b>Date and time detention will expire because of extension:</b>    Date: DD/MM/YY    Time: HH:MM</p> <p><b>Reason for continuing detention:</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> I am satisfied that the person still needs to be detained in order to be taken to the hospital or other place, or to be examined by a psychiatrist.</p> <p>Any comments (optional):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 50px; margin-top: 5px;"></div> <p><b>Name of practitioner making this order:</b> _____</p> <p><b>Qualifications of practitioner:</b> _____<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> Psychiatrist    <input type="checkbox"/> Medical Practitioner    <input type="checkbox"/> AMHP</p> <p><b>Signature of practitioner making this order:</b> _____</p> <p><b>Date and time order made:</b> _____    Date: DD/MM/YY    Time: HH:MM</p> |                                    |      |

FORM 3B – CONTINUATION OF DETENTION



### Notes: Form 3B – Continuation of detention

#### Continuation of detention under *Form 3A – Detention order*.

- Detention under a Form 3A can be continued for up to a further 24 hours by this form (Form 3B) if:
  - immediately before making the order, a medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner assesses the person; and
  - as a consequence, the practitioner is satisfied that the person still needs to be detained to enable the person to be taken to the place of examination by a psychiatrist (s28).
- Detention can be continued using a Form 3B multiple times, however the person cannot be detained under Forms 3A & 3B for a total period of more than 72 hours (or 144 hours if the referral is made outside a metropolitan area) (s28).

#### Continuation of detention of a person who is received into a place outside a metro area that is not an authorised hospital, to enable examination by a psychiatrist.

A person referred to an examination at a place that is not an authorised hospital, must be received at the place and can be detained there for up to 24 hours in order for an examination by a psychiatrist to occur. If:

- the place is outside a metropolitan area; and
- it is not practicable to complete the examination within the 24-hour period

a medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner at the place may make an order continuing the person's detention at the place, to enable the examination to be completed, for up to an additional 48 hours from the end of the 24-hour period (s59).

#### Continuation of detention to enable the person placed on an '*inpatient treatment order in a general hospital*' (Form 6B) to be taken to the general hospital.

Following a psychiatrist at a place that is not an authorised hospital making an '*inpatient treatment order in a general hospital*' (Form 6B) in respect of a person, the psychiatrist (or a medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner) can make an order continuing a person's detention at that place, if satisfied that the person needs to be detained in order to enable the person to be taken to the general hospital (s62). Detention can be continued for up to 24 hours from the time that the Form 6B was made (s62).


#### Continuation of detention to enable a person placed on an '*order authorising reception and detention of person in authorised hospital*' (Form 3D) to be taken to the authorised hospital (s62).

Following a psychiatrist making an '*order authorising reception and detention of person in authorised hospital*' (Form 3D) in respect of a person, the psychiatrist (or a medical practitioner or authorised mental health practitioner) can make an order continuing a person's detention at that place, if satisfied that the person needs to be detained in order to enable the person to be taken to the hospital (s62). Detention can be continued for up to 24 hours from the time that the Form 3D was made (s62).

#### Checklist of *Mental Health Act 2014* requirements related to this form:

#### Notes

- ☐ Give the person a copy of this form as soon as practicable.
- ☐ File this form on the person's medical record.
- ☐ Ensure that the person has the opportunity and means to contact any personal support person, any health professional currently providing treatment to the person and the Mental Health Advocacy Service as soon as practicable and at all reasonable times when the person is detained.

|   |                                    |      |
|---|------------------------------------|------|
| <br><b>CHIEF PSYCHIATRIST<br/>OF<br/>WESTERN AUSTRALIA</b><br><br><b>WA MENTAL HEALTH<br/>ACT 2014</b>   | Please use ID label or block print |      |
|   | SURNAME                            | UMRN |
|   | GIVEN NAMES                        | CMHI |
|   | BIRTHDATE                          | SEX  |
|   | ADDRESS                            |      |
| SECTIONS: 29, 63, 67, 92, 112, 129, 133, 148, 154   |                                    |      |
| <b>FORM 4A – TRANSPORT ORDER</b>  |                                    |      |
| <p><b>To the transport officer or police officer:</b> This order authorises you to apprehend the person named in this order and transport him or her to the place specified below.</p> <p><b>Place from which person is to be transported:</b> _____</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><input type="checkbox"/> Metro area    <input type="checkbox"/> Non-metro area</p> <p><b>Place to which person is to be transported:</b> _____</p> <p><b>Reasons for making transport order:</b> I am satisfied that the –</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> referred person needs to be taken to the place for examination by psychiatrist; <input checked="" type="radio"/> OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> person needs to be taken to general hospital to be detained under inpatient treatment order; OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> person needs to be taken to authorised hospital for further examination by psychiatrist; OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> involuntary inpatient in general hospital needs to be taken to authorised hospital following a transfer order; OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> involuntary inpatient in authorised hospital needs to be taken to another authorised hospital following a transfer order; OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> involuntary inpatient on leave of absence to obtain medical or surgical treatment at a general hospital to be taken to the general hospital; OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> involuntary inpatient on leave of absence that expires or is cancelled needs to be taken to hospital; OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> involuntary community patient not complying with order to attend needs to be taken to specified place; <input checked="" type="radio"/> OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> involuntary community patient needs to be taken to hospital as involuntary inpatient;</p> <p>AND</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> No other safe means of taking the person is reasonably available.</p> <p><b>Officer responsible for carrying out this order:</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Police officer and/or <input type="checkbox"/> Transport officer</p> <p><b>If police officer, reason for this:</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> I am satisfied that there is a significant risk of serious harm to the person being transported or to another person.</p> <p>OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> I am satisfied that a transport officer will not be available to carry out the order within a reasonable time; and any delay in carrying out the order beyond that time is likely to pose a significant risk of harm to the person being transported or to another person.</p> <p><b>If applicable, please note any special factors or other important details about the person being transported relevant to this order being carried out:</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 20px; width: 100%;"></div> <p><b>Name of the practitioner making the order:</b> _____</p> <p><b>Qualifications:</b> _____ <b>Signature:</b> _____</p> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: small;"><input type="checkbox"/> Psychiatrist    <input type="checkbox"/> Medical practitioner    <input type="checkbox"/> AMHP</p> <p><b>Date and time order made:</b> _____ <b>Date:</b> DD/MM/YY <b>Time:</b> HH:MM</p> <p><b>Date and time order will expire:</b> _____ <b>Date:</b> DD/MM/YY <b>Time:</b> HH:MM</p> <p style="font-size: x-small;">(See overleaf for duration of order)</p> |                                    |      |
| <p><b>REVOCATION OF TRANSPORT ORDER (if required)</b></p> <p><b>Reasons for revoking transport order:</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Automatically revoked because a referral has been revoked; OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> I am satisfied that the transport order is no longer needed.</p> <p><b>Name of revoking practitioner:</b> _____ <b>Date:</b> DD/MM/YY <b>Time:</b> HH:MM</p> <p><b>Qualifications:</b> _____ <b>Signature:</b> _____</p>  |                                    |      |

FORM 4A – TRANSPORT ORDER

### Notes: Form 4A – Transport Order

The transport order can be made in one of the below circumstances if the psychiatrist, medical practitioner or AMHP is satisfied that a transport order needs to be made and there is no other safe means reasonably available to take the person to the place.

| Circumstances for making transport order:  | Can be made by:              | Duration of order:   |
|--|------------------------------|--|
| Referred person to be taken to authorised hospital or other place for examination by psychiatrist (following Form 1A) <b>NE</b>                                  | Medical practitioner or AMHP | Ends when the referral expires, unless referral is extended or revoked, in which case transport order is automatically extended or revoked.                            |
| Person to be taken to general hospital and detained under inpatient treatment order (following Form 6B)  | Psychiatrist                 | 72 hours after inpatient treatment order in general hospital (Form 6B) is made. Unless extended or revoked using a Form 4B.  |
| Person at place other than authorised hospital to be taken to authorised hospital for further examination (following Form 3D)                                    | Psychiatrist                 | 72 hours after order authorising reception and detention in authorised hospital for further examination (Form 3C) is made. Unless extended or revoked using a Form 4B. |
| Involuntary inpatient in general hospital to be transferred to authorised hospital (following Form 4D)   | Psychiatrist                 | 72 hours after transport order made. Unless extended or revoked using a Form 4B.   |
| Involuntary inpatient in authorised hospital to be transferred to another authorised hospital (following Form 4D).   | Psychiatrist                 | 72 hours after transport order made. Unless extended or revoked using a Form 4B.   |
| Involuntary inpatient on leave of absence to obtain medical or surgical treatment at a general hospital to be taken to the general hospital (following Form 7A). | Psychiatrist                 | 72 hours after transport order made. Unless extended or revoked using a Form 4B.   |
| Involuntary inpatient on leave of absence that expires or is cancelled to be taken to hospital (following a Form 7C or an expiry of Form 7A)                     | Psychiatrist                 | 72 hours after transport order made. Unless extended or revoked using a Form 4B.   |
| Involuntary community patient not complying with order to attend to be taken to specified place (following Form 5F) <b>NE</b>                                    | Medical practitioner or AMHP | 72 hours after transport order made. Unless extended or revoked using a Form 4B.   |
| Involuntary community patient to be taken to hospital as involuntary inpatient (following Form 6A)   | Medical practitioner or AMHP | 72 hours after transport order made. Unless extended or revoked using a Form 4B.   |

**NE** The making of a transport order in these circumstances is a **Notifiable Event** which means, where possible, at least one personal support person must be notified about the making of the order.

#### Related forms:

- Form 4B – *Extension of transport order* can be used to extend a transport order when the person is being transported from a place outside a metropolitan area.

#### When police officer can carry out a transport order:

A transport order can only authorise a police officer instead of a transport officer to carry out the order if the practitioner or psychiatrist making the order is satisfied:

- that there is a significant risk of serious harm to the person being transported or to another person; or
- that — a transport officer will not be available to carry out the order within a reasonable time; and
  - any delay in carrying out the order beyond that time is likely to pose a significant risk of harm to the person being transported or to another person (s149(2)).

#### Revocation of transport order:

- A medical practitioner or mental health practitioner may make an order revoking a transport order made in respect of a person if satisfied that the transport order is no longer needed (s154).
- If the transport order is made to take a referred person to the place of examination and the referral is revoked, the transport order is automatically revoked (s153).

#### Checklist of *Mental Health Act 2014* requirements related to this form:


#### Notes

- ☐ Give the person a copy of this form as soon as practicable.
- ☐ File this form on the person's medical record.
- ☐ Give a copy of this form to the transport officer or police officer responsible for carrying out the order.
- ☐ **NE** If the making of the transport order is a Notifiable Event, notify at least one personal support person of the making of the order.

#### If transport order revoked:

- ☐ File this form with the revocation section completed on the person's medical record
- ☐ Give a copy to the transport officer or police officer responsible for carrying out the order
- ☐ Give a copy to the person.

(Not a requirement if transport order is revoked automatically following a revocation of the referral).

|  |                                    |      |
|--|------------------------------------|------|
|  <p><b>CHIEF PSYCHIATRIST<br/>OF<br/>WESTERN AUSTRALIA</b></p> <p>WA MENTAL HEALTH<br/>ACT 2014</p>   | Please use ID label or block print |      |
|  | SURNAME                            | UMRN |
|  | GIVEN NAMES                        | CMHI |
|  | BIRTHDATE                          | SEX  |
|  | ADDRESS                            |      |
| SECTION: 152   |                                    |      |
| <b>FORM 4B – EXTENSION OF TRANSPORT ORDER</b>  |                                    |      |
| <p><b>Date and time order would expire if not extended:</b> Date: DD/MM/YY Time:HH:MM<br/>(See Form 4A)</p> <p><b>Date and time order will expire because of extension:</b> Date: DD/MM/YY Time:HH:MM<br/>(Up to a further 72 hours)</p> <p><b>Reasons for extending transport order:</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> The place from which the person is being transported is outside a metropolitan area;<br/>AND</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> the transport officer or police officer who is transporting the person has requested an extension of the transport order because he or she has formed the opinion that the transport order is likely to expire before the person is received to the place where they are being transported.</p> <p>Any comments (optional):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 60px; width: 100%;"></div> |                                    |      |
| <p><b>Name of the practitioner making the order:</b> _____</p> <p><b>Qualifications:</b> _____<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> Psychiatrist <input type="checkbox"/> Medical practitioner <input type="checkbox"/> AMHP <input type="checkbox"/> Mental Health Practitioner</p> <p><b>Signature of the practitioner:</b> _____</p> <p><b>Date and time order made:</b> Date: DD/MM/YY Time:HH:MM</p>   |                                    |      |
| FORM 4B – EXTENSION OF TRANSPORT ORDER   |                                    |      |


**Notes: Form 4B – Extension of transport order****When to use this form**

- If there is a *Form 4A – Transport order* made and:
  - The place from which the person is being transported is outside a metro area; and
  - The transport officer or police officer who is transporting the person forms the opinion that the transport order is likely to expire before the person is received to the place where they are being transported,the transport officer or police officer may orally request an extension of the transport order from a medical practitioner or mental health practitioner (s152(3)).
- The practitioner may make an order orally extending the transport order for a further period of up to 72 hours, and must as soon as practicable complete this form (s152(4)).
- The transport order cannot be extended more than once (s152(5)).

Note: If a referral is extended and there is a transport order in place, this form does not need to be completed because the transport order is automatically extended.

**Checklist of *Mental Health Act 2014* requirements related to this form:****Notes**

- ☐ Give the person a copy of this form as soon as practicable.
- ☐ File this form on the person's medical record.
- ☐ Give a copy of this form to the transport officer or police officer responsible for carrying out the order.

|   |                                    |                     |
|---|------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <br><b>CHIEF PSYCHIATRIST<br/>OF<br/>WESTERN AUSTRALIA</b><br><br>WA MENTAL HEALTH<br>ACT 2014   | Please use ID label or block print |                     |
|   | <small>SURNAME</small>             | <small>UMRN</small> |
|   | <small>GIVEN NAMES</small>         | <small>CMHI</small> |
|   | <small>BIRTHDATE</small>           | <small>SEX</small>  |
|   | <small>ADDRESS</small>             |                     |
| SECTIONS: 66, 91  |                                    |                     |
| <b>FORM 4C – TRANSFER ORDER</b>   |                                    |                     |
| <p><b>This is an order to:</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> transfer an involuntary inpatient on a <i>Form 6A – Inpatient treatment order in an authorised hospital</i> from one authorised hospital to another. <b>NE</b></p> <p>OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> transfer an involuntary inpatient on a <i>Form 6B – Inpatient treatment order in a general hospital</i> from the general hospital to an authorised hospital. <b>NE</b></p> <p>Hospital from which person is being transferred: _____</p> <p>Authorised hospital to which the person is being transferred: _____</p> <p>Reasons for the transfer:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 250px; width: 100%; margin-top: 5px;"></div> <p>Name of the psychiatrist making the order: _____</p> <p>Qualifications of the psychiatrist making the order: _____</p> <p>Signature of the psychiatrist making the order: _____</p> <p>Date and time order made: _____ Date: DD/MM/YY Time: HH:MM</p> |                                    |                     |

FORM 4C – TRANSFER ORDER

**Notes: Form 4C – Transfer order****When to use this form:**

1. If a person is detained at an authorised hospital under a *Form 6A – Inpatient treatment order in an authorised hospital*, the treating psychiatrist (or if a treating psychiatrist is not reasonably available, another psychiatrist at the authorised hospital) may make a transfer order using this form, authorising the involuntary inpatient's transfer from the authorised hospital to another authorised hospital specified in the order (s91).

Or

2. If:
  - a person is under a *Form 6B – Inpatient order in a general hospital*, and
  - the treating psychiatrist is satisfied that attempting to take the involuntary inpatient to an authorised hospital no longer poses a significant risk to the inpatient's physical health, then the treating psychiatrist can make a transfer order using this form, authorising the inpatient's transfer to the authorised hospital (s66).


**NE** The making of the transfer order is a **Notifiable Event** which means, where possible, at least one personal support person must be notified about the making of this order.

**Transport order:**

- A psychiatrist may make a *Form 4A - Transport order* in respect of the involuntary inpatient under the transfer order if satisfied that no other safe means of taking the involuntary inpatient to the authorised hospital is reasonably available (s67, s92).

**Checklist of *Mental Health Act 2014* requirements related to this form:****Notes**

- ☐ **NE** Notify at least one of the involuntary inpatient's personal support persons of the making of this order.
- ☐ Give the involuntary inpatient a copy of this form as soon as practicable.
- ☐ File this form on the involuntary inpatient's medical record.

|  |                                    |             |
|--|------------------------------------|-------------|
| <br><b>CHIEF PSYCHIATRIST<br/>OF<br/>WESTERN AUSTRALIA</b><br><br><b>WA MENTAL HEALTH<br/>ACT 2014</b>  | Please use ID label or block print |             |
|  | <b>SURNAME</b>                     | <b>UMRN</b> |
|  | <b>GIVEN NAMES</b>                 | <b>CMHI</b> |
|  | <b>BIRTHDATE</b>                   | <b>SEX</b>  |
|  | <b>ADDRESS</b>                     |             |
| SECTION: 204   |                                    |             |
| <b>FORM 9A – RECORD OF EMERGENCY PSYCHIATRIC TREATMENT</b>   |                                    |             |
| <p><b>Does the person have an Advance Health Directive?</b><br/> <input type="checkbox"/> Yes   <input type="checkbox"/> No   <input type="checkbox"/> Unknown</p>   |                                    |             |
| <p><b>Date and time that emergency psychiatric treatment was provided to the person:</b>      Date: <span style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; width: 100px;"></span> / <span style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; width: 100px;"></span> / <span style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; width: 100px;"></span> Time: <span style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; width: 100px;"></span>:<span style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; width: 100px;"></span></p> |                                    |             |
| <p><b>Place where emergency psychiatric treatment was provided to the person:</b>      <span style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; width: 600px;"></span></p>  |                                    |             |
| <p><b>Particulars of the circumstances in which the treatment was provided:</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 150px; width: 100%;"></div>   |                                    |             |
| <p><b>Particulars of the treatment provided:</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 150px; width: 100%;"></div>  |                                    |             |
| <p><b>Name of medical practitioner who provided the treatment:</b> <span style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; width: 200px;"></span></p>  |                                    |             |
| <p><b>Qualifications of medical practitioner who provided the treatment:</b> <span style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; width: 200px;"></span></p>  |                                    |             |
| <p><b>Signature of medical practitioner who provided the treatment:</b> <span style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; display: inline-block; width: 200px;"></span></p>   |                                    |             |
| <p><b>Names of any other people involved in providing the treatment:</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 80px; width: 100%;"></div>   |                                    |             |

FORM 9A – RECORD OF EMERGENCY PSYCHIATRIC TREATMENT



**Notes: Form 9A – Record of emergency psychiatric treatment**

**When to use this form:**

A medical practitioner may provide a person with emergency psychiatric treatment without informed consent being given to the provision of the treatment (s203).

A medical practitioner who provides emergency psychiatric treatment to a person must record the provision of the treatment to the person in this form (s204).

Emergency psychiatric treatment can be provided to any person, including a voluntary patient or a referred person.

**Definition of emergency psychiatric treatment:**

Emergency psychiatric treatment is treatment that needs to be provided to a person:

- to save the person's life; or
- to prevent the person from behaving in a way that is likely to result in serious physical injury to the person or another person (s202(1)).

Emergency psychiatric treatment **does not** include any of the following treatments:

- electroconvulsive therapy;
- psychosurgery; and
- prohibited treatments (deep sleep therapy, insulin coma therapy, insulin sub coma therapy) (s202(2)).

**Checklist of Mental Health Act 2014 requirements related to this form:**

**Notes**

- ☐ Give the person a copy of this form as soon as practicable.
- ☐ File this form on the person's medical record.
- ☐ ☒ Give a copy of this form to the Chief Psychiatrist.
- ☐ ☒ If the person is a mentally impaired accused, give a copy of this form to the Mentally Impaired Accused Review Board.

## List of Forms

### LIST OF *MENTAL HEALTH ACT 2014* FORMS

#### Pack 1 – Referral of person for an examination by a psychiatrist

| Form Number | Form Name  | Sections of the Act referred to |
|-------------|--|---------------------------------|
| 1A          | REFERRAL FOR EXAMINATION BY PSYCHIATRIST<br>ATTACHMENT TO FORM 1A – INFORMATION PROVIDED BY ANOTHER PERSON IN CONFIDENCE | 26, 31, 36, 37, 41, 42, 43      |
| 1B          | VARIATION OF REFERRAL  | 45, 46                          |

#### Pack 2 – Order for assessment of a voluntary inpatient

| Form Number | Form Name                                   | Sections of the Act referred to |
|-------------|---|---------------------------------|
| 2A          | ORDER FOR ASSESSMENT OF VOLUNTARY INPATIENT | 34, 35                          |

#### Pack 3 – Detention of a person to enable a person to be taken to a place, or to enable an examination by a psychiatrist

| Form Number | Form Name  | Sections of the Act referred to |
|-------------|--|---------------------------------|
| 3A          | DETENTION ORDER  | 28, 62                          |
| 3B          | CONTINUATION OF DETENTION  | 28, 59, 62                      |
| 3C          | CONTINUATION OF DETENTION FOLLOWING EXAMINATION BY PSYCHIATRIST            | 55, 56                          |
| 3D          | ORDER AUTHORISING RECEPTION AND DETENTION OF PERSON IN AUTHORISED HOSPITAL | 61                              |
| 3E          | ORDER THAT PERSON CANNOT CONTINUE TO BE DETAINED                           | 72                              |

#### Pack 4 – Detention of a person to enable a person to be taken to a place, or to enable an examination by a psychiatrist

| Form Number | Form Name                          | Sections of the Act referred to         |
|-------------|------------------------------------|---|
| 4A          | TRANSPORT ORDER                    | 29, 63, 67, 92, 112, 129, 133, 148, 154 |
| 4B          | EXTENSION OF TRANSPORT ORDER       | 152                                     |
| 4C          | TRANSFER ORDER                     | 66, 91                                  |
| 4E          | INTERSTATE TRANSFER ORDER          | 555                                     |
| 4F          | INTERSTATE TRANSFER APPROVAL ORDER | 557                                     |

**Pack 5 – Community treatment order**

| <b>Form Number</b> | <b>Form Name</b>  | <b>Sections of the Act referred to</b>              |
|--------------------|---|---|
| 5A                 | COMMUNITY TREATMENT ORDER<br>ATTACHMENT TO 5A – TERMS OF CTO  | 55, 56, 61, 72, 75,<br>76, 89, 90, 120, 123,<br>131 |
| 5B                 | CONTINUATION OF COMMUNITY TREATMENT ORDER   | 121   |
| 5C                 | VARIATION OF COMMUNITY TREATMENT ORDER  | 122, 135, 137                                       |
| 5D                 | REQUEST MADE BY A SUPERVISING PSYCHIATRIST FOR A PRACTITIONER TO CONDUCT THE MONTHLY EXAMINATION OF A PATIENT | 118, 119  |
| 5E                 | NOTICE AND RECORD OF BREACH OF COMMUNITY TREATMENT ORDER  | 127   |
| 5F                 | ORDER TO ATTEND   | 128   |

**Pack 6 – Inpatient treatment order**

| <b>Form Number</b> | <b>Form Name</b>   | <b>Sections of the Act referred to</b> |
|--------------------|--|--|
| 6A                 | INPATIENT TREATMENT ORDER IN AUTHORISED HOSPITAL   | 55, 56, 72, 120,<br>123, 131           |
| 6B                 | INPATIENT TREATMENT ORDER IN GENERAL HOSPITAL<br>ATTACHMENT TO FORM 6B – INPATIENT TREATMENT ORDER IN GENERAL HOSPITAL: REPORT TO CHIEF PSYCHIATRIST | 61, 89, 90, 131                        |
| 6C                 | CONTINUATION OF INPATIENT TREATMENT ORDER  | 89                                     |
| 6D                 | CONFIRMATION OF INPATIENT TREATMENT ORDER  | 68, 124                                |

**Pack 7 – Grant of leave of absence and absence without leave**

| <b>Form Number</b> | <b>Form Name</b>                                       | <b>Sections of the Act referred to</b> |
|--------------------|--|--|
| 7A                 | GRANT OF LEAVE TO INVOLUNTARY INPATIENT                | 105                                    |
| 7B                 | EXTENSION, VARIATION OR CANCELLATION OF GRANT OF LEAVE | 106, 110                               |
| 7C                 | CANCELLATION OF GRANT OF LEAVE                         | 110                                    |
| 7D                 | RETURN ORDER   | 98, 101                                |

**Pack 8 – Search and seizure of articles**

| <b>Form Number</b> | <b>Form Name</b>                   | <b>Sections of the Act referred to</b> |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| 8A                 | RECORD OF SEARCH AND SEIZURE       | 165, 166                               |
| 8B                 | RECORD OF RETURN OF SEIZED ARTICLE | 167                                    |

275

**Pack 9 – Emergency treatment**

| <b>Form Number</b> | <b>Form Name</b>   | <b>Sections of the Act referred to</b> |
|--------------------|--|--|
| 9A                 | RECORD OF EMERGENCY PSYCHIATRIC TREATMENT  | 204                                    |
| 9B                 | REPORT TO CHIEF PSYCHIATRIST ABOUT PROVISION OF URGENT NON-PSYCHIATRIC TREATMENT | 242                                    |

**Pack 10 – Bodily restraint**

| <b>Form Number</b> | <b>Form Name</b>                  | <b>Sections of the Act referred to</b> |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 10A                | AUTHORISATION OF BODILY RESTRAINT | 230, 231, 233, 234, 235, 237, 239      |

**Pack 11 – Seclusion**

| <b>Form Number</b> | <b>Form Name</b>           | <b>Sections of the Act referred to</b> |
|--------------------|----------------------------|--|
| 11                 | AUTHORISATION OF SECLUSION | 214, 215, 217, 219, 221, 222, 223      |

**Pack 12 – Communication and Information**

| <b>Form Number</b> | <b>Form Name</b>                        | <b>Sections of the Act referred to</b> |
|--------------------|---|--|
| 12A                | NOMINATION OF NOMINATED PERSON          | 275                                    |
| 12B                | RESTRICTION ON FREEDOM OF COMMUNICATION | 262                                    |
| 12C                | REFUSAL OF REQUEST TO ACCESS RECORDS    | 248                                    |

**Other**

| <b>Form Number</b> | <b>Form Name</b>              | <b>Sections of the Act referred to</b> |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| 13                 | STATISTICS ABOUT ECT          | 201                                    |
| 14                 | REPORT OF NOTIFIABLE INCIDENT | 526                                    |

*Reference: Clinicians' Practice Guide to the Mental Health Act 2014, Office of the Chief Psychiatrist, Health Department of Western Australia. Edition 2. November 2015.*

**Name of Facility****EMERGENCY PSYCHIATRIC TREATMENT***(Mental Health Act 1996- ss 113-115)*

This record of treatment needs to be completed if a person refuses or is unable to consent to psychiatric treatment and treatment is necessary to save the person's life or to prevent the person from behaving in a way that can be expected to result in serious physical harm to the person or any other person.

|  |
|--|
| <b>Name of person receiving treatment or Patient label (if available):</b> |
|--|

**Legal Status-**  
 (circle)

☐ Voluntary

☐ Referred person

**Particulars of treatment:**

Time treatment given:

Place of treatment:

**Reason for treatment:**
**Effects of treatment (including any adverse reactions):**
**Name of person giving the treatment:**
**Designation:**
**Signature-**
**Date-**
**Names and designations of other staff involved in the giving of the treatment:**

A copy of this report must be forwarded to the Mental Health Review Board, GPO Box Y3063, East St George's Terrace, PERTH 6832 or Fax to 9219 3163. Should a critical incident arise out of the giving of Emergency Psychiatric Treatment the Chief Psychiatrist must be informed. In those circumstances contact Ms Janet Peacock, Manager, Office of the Chief Psychiatrist on 92224079 or e-mail [janet.peacock@health.wa.gov.au](mailto:janet.peacock@health.wa.gov.au)

*Figure 14. Record of Treatment*

## 7.2 Ketamine for management of acutely agitated patients

### Theory

Acutely disturbed patients are a risk for aeromedical transport. In addition to physical restraint and additional escorts, they need safe and effective sedation.

Some patients require very large doses of conventional sedation (benzodiazepines and antipsychotics) which pose an airway risk or cause other complications. Some patients are subsequently intubated and ventilated to achieve safe transfer, which is not ethically sound for patients primarily with a mental health problem.

Ketamine has been used to manage acutely disturbed patients and there is anecdotal and limited published evidence of its efficacy and safety.

Two scenarios may present.

- a. Management of acute severe agitation or violence, not responding to other treatment, where Ketamine is given as a single IM dose to achieve control.
- b. Management of severe agitation during aeromedical transfer, where Ketamine is given by infusion to minimize risks of excessive sedation and avoid intubation.

This guideline provides indications and contraindications for the use of Ketamine to manage acute severe agitation and for relatively short duration air transport by RFDS medical staff.

### Pre-flight Assessment

The usual scenario will be an acutely disturbed patient requiring transfer to a Mental Health unit. Preflight assessment should, in addition to normal clinical details and vital signs, ensure the following details are obtained.

- A summary of the drugs and total doses administered so far.
- Assessment of the level of agitation-sedation using the RASS score.
- Any significant co-morbidities (respiratory, cardiac, renal, diabetes).
- Previous difficult aeromedical transfer for a MH problem (refer to online Register).
- Check on empty bladder, need for nicotine patch, and other preventable causes of agitation.
- Is the patient fasted?

The flight will be doctor-accompanied.

A Police escort will still be required if the patient is on Mental Health forms.

The referring hospital should NOT be advised to administer Ketamine whilst awaiting the RFDS aircraft.

### Patient preparation & in-flight care

Consider this an anaesthetic and ensure full monitoring and resuscitation facilities are available.

Provide 'premedication' with other agents such as benzodiazepines, antipsychotics and antiemetic.

Contraindications and adverse reactions to Ketamine are listed at the end of this guideline.

1. Ketamine may be administered as a **single intramuscular dose at 4 mg/kg** if management of an acutely agitated patient is required and intravenous access is not possible. IV access can then be obtained.
2. Ketamine should preferably be given as an **initial IV bolus dose of 0.5-1.0 mg/kg**.  
(Should work within 30 seconds and last for about 10 minutes.)

Follow with similar intermittent bolus doses of 0.5-1.0 mg/kg as required.

3. If two bolus doses required in first hour, commence **infusion at 1-1.5mg/kg/hour**.

*(IV route is quick onset and offset. You should be able to deliver an "awake" patient at the receiving hospital. )*

Titrate the dose to achieve a target sedation level of a calm, cooperative patient who can still respond to verbal commands. RASS score = 0 to -2

There is no maximum dose but exercise caution in exceeding 10mg/kg or 1000mg.

Administer oxygen by simple face-mask

Elevate stretcher backrest to improve spontaneous ventilation and minimize risk of aspiration.

Provide continuous monitoring of SaO<sub>2</sub>, NIBP and ECG.

Use continuous ETCO<sub>2</sub> monitoring through the oxygen mask, as in [Severe behavioural disturbance in paediatric patients](#)

Patients must be physically restrained and escorted as per normal MH guidelines.

Decide on the patient destination, based on total sedation received and ability to deliver patient who is not obtunded, mildly sedated with a secure airway. Confirm in flight. *(Consider SCGH ED for Graylands patients, RPH or PMH for Bentley patients.)*

### Contraindications

Severe hypertension, recent myocardial infarction, history of stroke, cerebral trauma, intra-cerebral mass or haemorrhage, severe cardiovascular disease.

Age is not a contraindication. May be used in adolescents.

### Adverse Reactions

*Common* – transient hypertension, tachycardia, increased muscle tone.

*Infrequent* – nausea and vomiting, hypotension and bradycardia, pain on injection.

*Rare* – apnoea, laryngeal spasm, arrhythmias.

### Side-effects

Emergence reactions including vivid dreams, hallucinations, confusion and restlessness (12%).

Use benzodiazepine premedication. These reactions may last several hours and are less frequent with IM administration, in the young and the elderly.

### Administration

Dilute for intravenous use to 10mg/mL (500mg diluted to 50mL or 200mg to 20mL)

Administered slowly over 1 minute.

Compatible with 0.9% Normal Saline, and Dextrose 5%.

### Special Notes

Dosage should be based on the patient's estimated lean body mass.

### References

Australian Medicines Handbook.

Le Cong M, Gynther B, Hunter E, et al. Ketamine sedation for patients with acute agitation and psychiatric illness requiring aeromedical retrieval. *Emerg Med J* 2012;29:4 335-337

Bredmose PP, et al. Pre-hospital use of Ketamine for analgesia and procedural sedation. *Emerg Med J* 2009;26:1 62-64

## 7.3 Richmond Agitation-Sedation Scale (RASS)

### *Theory*

1. Patients with acute mental illness, substance abuse, drug overdose or other clinical conditions can exhibit a spectrum of behaviour from extreme agitation to heavy sedation.
2. An objective assessment tool can be used to describe this more accurately. The Glasgow Coma Scale was developed for ranking the level of coma in head injured patients. It was not designed for assessing sedated patients, nor does it score increased levels of arousal.
3. The Richmond Agitation-Sedation Scale (RASS) has been widely used in Intensive Care environments to help communicate the status of patients in a standardized manner and to enable titration of sedation to an optimal level.
4. The RASS has application for aeromedical practice in helping to better communicate and record patient behaviour in a standardized manner.
5. The RASS ranges from +4 to -5. At one extreme, +4 represents a very combative, violent patient, who is considered dangerous to staff. At the other extreme, -5 represents a patient who is unrousable, with no response to voice or physical stimulation. A score of 0 equates with a patient who is alert and calm. (See table attached.)

### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

1. RFDS doctors are encouraged to try and score patients when assessing a flight request. With time we may be able to encourage widespread use throughout the health system.
2. A RASS should be conducted when accepting a patient at handover and recorded on our In-flight Observation and Treatment sheets.
3. A RASS can be used in flight to document peaks of agitation or sedation, particularly in relation to administration of drugs. Patients should ideally have a target score of 0.
4. A RASS should also be recorded prior to handover at the receiving end. Recording of this score provides a quantitative measure of agitation or sedation which will be useful when cases are audited. We can add the RASS to our electronic records.
5. The formal assessment requires no more than three steps: observing the patient, or speaking to them, or physical stimulation.

### *References*

1. Sessler CN, Gosnell M, Grap MJ, Brophy GT, O'Neal PV, Keane KA et al. The Richmond Agitation-Sedation Scale: validity and reliability in adult intensive care patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2002; 166:1338-1344.
2. Ely EW, Truman B, Shintani A, Thomason JWW, Wheeler AP, Gordon S et al. Monitoring sedation status over time in ICU patients: the reliability and validity of the Richmond Agitation Sedation Scale (RASS). *JAMA* 2003; 289:2983-2991.



Table 6. Richmond Agitation Sedation Scale (RASS)

| Richmond Agitation-Sedation Scale (RASS) |                   |  |
|--|-------------------|--|
| Score                                    | Term              | Description  |
| +4                                       | Combative         | Overtly combative, violent, immediate danger to staff  |
| +3                                       | Very agitated     | Pulls or removes tube(s) or catheter(s); aggressive  |
| +2                                       | Agitated          | Frequent non-purposeful movement, fights ventilator  |
| +1                                       | Restless          | Anxious but movements not aggressive vigorous  |
| 0  | Alert and calm    |  |
| -1                                       | Drowsy            | Not fully alert, but has sustained awakening (eye-opening/eye contact) to <i>voice</i> ( <b>&gt;10 seconds</b> ) |
| -2                                       | Light sedation    | Briefly awakens with eye contact to <i>voice</i> ( <b>&lt;10 seconds</b> )                                       |
| -3                                       | Moderate sedation | Movement or eye opening to <i>voice</i> ( <b>but no eye contact</b> )  |
| -4                                       | Deep sedation     | No response to voice, but movement or eye opening to <i>physical</i> stimulation                                 |
| -5                                       | Unroutable        | No response to <i>voice or physical</i> stimulation  |

## Procedure

### Observe patient

- Is patient alert and calm? **(score 0)**
- Does patient have behaviour that is consistent with restlessness or agitation using the criteria listed above? **(score 1 to 4)**

If patient is not alert, in a **loud speaking voice** state patient's name and direct patient to open eyes and look at speaker. Repeat once if necessary. Can prompt patient to continue looking at speaker.

- Patient has eye opening and eye contact, which is sustained for more than 10 seconds. **(score -1).**
- Patient has eye opening and eye contact, but this is not sustained for 10 seconds. **(score -2).**
- Patient has any movement in response to voice, excluding eye contact? **(score -3).**

If patient does not respond to voice, **physically stimulate** patient by shaking shoulder and then rubbing sternum if there is no response to shaking shoulder.

- Patient has any movement to physical stimulation **(score -4).**
- Patient has no response to voice or physical stimulation **(score -5).**

## 7.4 Severe behavioural disturbance in paediatric patients

### Theory

Children may present with an acute behavioural disturbance as a result of a number of potential and possibly co-existing causes. These include: intoxication, substance abuse, organic processes, psychiatric illness, social disruption. Consider issues such as brain injury from foetal alcohol syndrome, solvent abuse and illicit drugs. Histories of abuse and neglect may also feature prominently.

Modifications to sedation protocols need to be made to account for differing pharmacokinetics and needs to adults.

The key principles of patient, staff and aircraft safety still need to be adhered to.

### Pre-flight management

1. Exclusion of organic causes for behavioural disturbance must have taken place to the best of the referring location's capacity. For more isolated locations this may require the assessing RFDS doctor to manage.
2. Referring locations should ensure parents, guardians and competent minors are informed of the process and the likely need for physical restraint and sedation in flight.
3. During the pre-flight assessment the assessing doctor should enquire about features that may point to risk of violence and resistance to certain drug groups. See guideline 1.5
4. Longer acting oral sedation (e.g. Lorazepam or Olanzapine) may be given pre-flight however adequate intravenous access should be in place in case rapid sedation is required in flight. Dosing: Lorazepam-oral 0.02– 0.06 mg/kg 8-24 hourly, Diazepam – oral 0.2-0.4mg/kg 8-12 hourly, Olanzapine 0.1-0.2mg/kg/day
5. Careful consideration should be given to the choice of escort and the likely behaviour of that escort in terms of capacity to calm rather than inflame the situation. A police officer may still be the best choice for particularly violent patients.
6. All children under 16 should be accompanied by an RFDS doctor.
7. Referring doctors must be informed that Bentley Hospital Adolescent Unit is not able to receive patients who have had sedation. Patients who are intended for this unit may need to also be referred to PMH or RPH if over 15 years old. for medical clearance.
8. Care of nutrition, hydration and bladder must be attended to. Ensure patient has voided pre-flight. If heavily sedated may need catheterisation however this is a very invasive procedure and may be unreasonably traumatic for a child. If sedation heavy keep fasted.

### In-flight management

1. The choice of drugs used for sedation should take in to account the following problems:

#### **Disinhibition with benzodiazepines.**

This is more common in the paediatric population in particular those with organic brain disease, substance abuse, learning disabilities and impulse control problems. If after two doses of benzodiazepine the desired affect is not achieved consider a different pharmacological group.

#### **Respiratory depression.**

Supplemental O<sub>2</sub> should be given and continuous SaO<sub>2</sub> monitoring. Heavily sedated patients should have continuous capnometry monitoring, this can be achieved by inserting the ET CO<sub>2</sub> sensor into the side of a Hudson mask. Whilst this does not measure absolute ET CO<sub>2</sub> it provides a trend in rate and depth of respiration.



Figure 15. Hudson mask modified for ETCO<sub>2</sub> monitoring.

### ***Extrapyramidal side effects.***

The paediatric population is far more susceptible to acute dystonias especially those naive to antipsychotics. Prophylactic benztropine 0.02mg/kg (12-24 hourly) should be administered with antipsychotics.

### ***Dysrhythmias***

Antipsychotics should not be used in patients with a history of prolonged QTc and ECG monitoring is recommended when using intravenously.

2. For rapid intravenous sedation in-flight;
  - Midazolam 0.05-0.2 mg/kg continuous SaO<sub>2</sub> monitoring is required.
  - Haloperidol 0.1-0.2 mg/kg (max 0.5mg/kg daily) continuous ECG monitoring is required.
  - Promethazine 0.5-1.5mg/kg 8 hourly. (Note anti-cholinergic side-effects esp compounded if has also had benztropine.)
  - Anaesthetic agents such as propofol or ketamine should be considered absolute last resort for use on doctor accompanied flights with appropriate levels of monitoring and in fasted patients.
3. The doctor on board the flight and clinical coordinator should ensure an appropriate accepting emergency department for medical clearance prior transfer to Bentley Hospital, Adolescent unit.

## ***References***

1. Royal Children's Hospital Clinical Practice Guidelines. Emergency Restraint and Sedation – Code Grey. [ Internet , last updated October 2012; cited 13/05/2013]. Available from: <http://www.rch.org.au/clinicalguide/index.cfm>
2. East London NHS Foundation Trust CAMHS. Guidelines for the Management of acutely disturbed children and adolescents in psychiatric settings (aged 6-17years). August 2012.

## 8 MISCELLANEOUS

### 8.1 Anaphylaxis

#### Theory

1. Common causes of an anaphylactic reaction include bee stings, drugs (including antibiotics, streptokinase and anaesthetic agents), foodstuffs, vaccines, snake antivenom and blood or blood products.
2. The clinical presentation is acute collapse with any of the following features:
  - *Cutaneous*: burning sensation, itching of lips, mouth or throat, flushing, angioedema, urticaria, conjunctival injection or conjunctival oedema;
  - *Cardiovascular*: tachycardia, hypotension, shock;
  - *Respiratory*: rhinitis, bronchospasm, coughing, laryngeal oedema, choking sensation;
  - *Gastro-intestinal*: abdominal cramps, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea;
  - *CNS*: Apprehension, metallic taste in mouth, loss of consciousness, convulsions.

#### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Anticipate. Always question carefully about allergies before administering any drugs and exercise extra caution in known atopic individuals (asthma, hay fever, eczema).
2. Confirm the diagnosis. Rule out other causes for the patient's signs and symptoms (e.g. vasovagal or hysterical reaction, asthma, pulmonary embolism, hypovolaemia, hypoglycaemia).
3. Adrenaline is the treatment of choice for severe allergic reactions.
  - The dose is 0.3 to 1.0mg IM in adults (0.3 – 1.0 mL of 1:1,000).
  - The dose in children is 10 µg/kg IM (e.g. 0.1 mL of 1:1,000 IM in a 10kg child).
  - In severe shock, or if IM injection has been ineffective, adrenaline may be administered by titrated infusion. (Drug infusion guideline 1. Adrenaline.)
4. Remove allergen.
  - Delay further absorption. Stop IV blood or drugs if suspected as cause.
5. Assess the airway.
  - If total obstruction intubate or create a surgical airway.
  - If airway obstruction with stridor give adrenaline IM as above then adrenaline 5mL 1:1000 nebulised.
6. Assess breathing.
  - Give Oxygen 6-10 litres/min via facemask, assist ventilation if necessary.
  - Treat bronchospasm with adrenaline IM as above.
  - Follow this with salbutamol 5mg nebulised every 15 minutes.
  - Consider other treatment modalities, e.g. further adrenaline, IV salbutamol.

7. Assess circulation.
  - If no pulse, treat as for cardiac arrest protocol.
  - If shocked, and no parental adrenaline already given, give adrenaline IV as above.
  - Give fluids: Haemaccel or Hartmann's solution 500 to 1000 mL IV stat for an adult (20 mL/kg in children), further fluids according to clinical response.
8. Monitor response, especially heart rate and blood pressure (good index of response to treatment).
9. Consider other drugs to counteract histamine release and inflammatory response, e.g.
  - Steroids: hydrocortisone 4mg/kg (up to 200mg) IV 6 hourly or dexamethasone 0.1 - 0.25 mg/kg (up to 8mg IM or IV).
  - H2 receptor blockers (protracted cases): ranitidine 50mg IV 8-12 hourly.
  - Glucagon (especially for patients on  $\beta$  blockers who have more severe reactions) 1mg IV every 5 mins.
10. Document on an Incident Report to permit follow up of blood cross-match, medical records, and for patient advice and Medic Alert warning.

### **Medical Chest Items**

Adrenaline ampoules 1:1,000, 1mL (Item 99)

Promethazine mixture 5mg/ 5 mL (Item 119)

Loratadine tablets 10mg (Item 157)

Salbutamol Aerosol Spray 100 $\mu$ g/dose (Item 107)

Aerosol Spacer (Item 229)

Prednisolone tabs 5mg (Item 151)

Oxygen (where available).

### **References**

Bersten A, Soni N. Oh's Intensive Care Manual. 6th ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009. Advanced Life Support Group. Advanced Paediatric Life Support. The Practical Approach. 5<sup>th</sup> ed. Blackwell Publishing Ltd. 2005.

Cameron P, Jelinek G, Kelly A, et al. Textbook of Adult Emergency Medicine. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. Churchill Livingstone. 2009.

## 8.2 Hyperkalaemia

### Theory

1. Potassium is the principal intracellular cation and is largely responsible for the maintenance of the resting membrane potential. Potassium is shifted out of the cell in acidotic states whereas insulin and  $\beta_2$  agonists promote potassium movement into the cell.
2. Hyperkalaemia is defined as a serum potassium  $> 5.0$  mmol/L.
3. Causes include:
  - Factitious (longstanding or haemolysed specimen, very high WCC)
  - Tissue damage (multi-trauma, burns, rhabdomyolysis)
  - Decreased excretion (renal failure, Addison's disease)
  - Drugs (indomethacin, spironolactone, ACEI)
  - Compartment shift (acidosis, insulin deficiency, digoxin overdose, suxamethonium, fluoride poisoning)
4. Clinical features include tingling, paraesthesiae, weakness and flaccid paralysis.
5. ECG features include heart block, peaked T waves, flattened P waves, prolonged P-R interval, widened QRS, sinus arrest or asystole.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Treat the underlying cause.
2. For life threatening hyperkalaemia give 50 gm dextrose (100 mL of 50% dextrose) with 5-10 units actrapid insulin IV followed by:
3. IV sodium bicarbonate 50-100 mmol over 30 min (if acidotic):
  - Avoid if patient has pulmonary oedema.
4. IV calcium gluconate 20 mL of 10% (2.2 mmol) or calcium chloride 10 mL of 10% solution;
  - Reduces the cardiotoxic effects of potassium.
  - Administer by slow IV (max 2 mL/min), repeat if necessary.
5. Salbutamol – 2 x 5 mg nebs 30 mins apart will reduce serum K<sup>+</sup> by 1 mmol/L for 4 hours

### Special Notes

1. Patients in renal failure need close attention to hydration status, consider diuresis with frusemide or inducement of diarrhoea with sorbitol / lactulose.
2. Oral and rectal resonium A 15-30 g 6/24 will reduce serum K<sup>+</sup> in less acute cases.

### Medical Chest Items

Salbutamol aerosol spray 100  $\mu$ g (item 107).

### References

- Bersten A, Soni N. Oh's Intensive Care Manual. 6th ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009.
- Dunn R, Dille S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.
- Thomas M. Orientation Manual For Renal Unit Medical Officers, RPH, current 1999.
- CAPD Manual for Remote Nurses, Royal Perth Hospital, current 1999.

## 8.3 Hypokalaemia

### *Theory*

1. Hypokalaemia is defined as a serum potassium < 3.5 mmol/L.
2. Potassium is the principal intracellular cation and is largely responsible for the maintenance of the resting membrane potential. Potassium is shifted out of the cell in acidotic states whereas insulin and  $\beta_2$  agonists promote potassium movement into the cell.
3. Causes include:
  - Abnormal losses (vomiting and diarrhoea, drugs especially diuretics and corticosteroids, Conn's Syndrome, Cushing's Syndrome)
  - Inadequate intake
  - Compartment shift (alkalosis, insulin,  $\beta_2$  agonists)
4. Clinical features include weakness, hypotonicity, depression, vasoconstriction, rhabdomyolysis, ileus and arrhythmias. Tetany if  $K^+ < 2.5\text{mmol/L}$
5. ECG changes include peaking of P waves, prolonged PR interval, T wave flattening or inversion, prominent U waves and atrial and ventricular tachyarrhythmias, especially torsade de pointes.
6. May be associated with hypomagnesaemia.

### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

1. IV infusion of potassium chloride:
  - Maximum rate: 40 mmol/hr (1 g = 13 mmol)
  - ECG monitoring is required at high infusion rates
2. Correct Magnesium:
  - $\text{Mg}_2\text{SO}_4$  10mmol over 5min then 20-60mmol/day

### *References*

Bersten A, Soni N. Oh's Intensive Care Manual. 6th ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009.

Dunn R, Dilley S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.



## 8.4 Shock

### Theory

1. Shock is defined as a state of inadequate tissue perfusion and oxygenation of tissues. In practice shock should be considered when systolic blood pressure is less than 90 mmHg.
2. Shock may be present due to hypovolaemia, reduced vascular tone and / or reduced cardiac output.
  - Causes of hypovolaemia (reduced intravascular volume), include haemorrhage (concealed or revealed), dehydration (loss of intra and extracellular fluids) due to losses or sequestration in the gut, excessive diuresis and excessive insensible losses (sweating).
  - Causes of reduced vascular tone include peripheral vasodilatation as occurs with septic shock, anaphylaxis, drugs, and autonomic neuropathy or spinal cord injury.
  - Causes of reduced cardiac output include cardiac failure secondary to arrhythmias, myocardial infarction, valvular disease, pulmonary embolus or cardiomyopathies; and reduced venous return as in venacaval obstruction due to abdominal masses (e.g. gravid uterus) or raised intra-thoracic pressure (eg. PEEP in ventilated patients).

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Ideally shocked patients should be stabilized at the referring location prior to transfer. A patient that is unable to be stabilized due to inadequate local resources or ongoing problems should be a Priority 1 or 2 doctor-accompanied flight.
2. If hypotension develops in-flight:
  - Assess if treatment is necessary; does the patient have signs of shock such as pallor, sweating, cool mottled extremities, tachycardia, depressed level of consciousness and a reduced urine output? Can the hypotension (systolic blood pressure less than 90 mmHg) be regarded as normal for the patient or secondary to treatment? Common drugs implicated include vasodilators, narcotics (eg. Morphine), and antihypertensives. Falling blood pressure can occur in patients on Salbutamol infusions due to peripheral effects. Initial management may be to reduce the infusion or cease the suspected medication or observe further.
  - Administer high flow oxygen. A non-rebreathing mask should be considered.
3. Is patient hypovolemic, peripherally vasodilated or is there obstruction to venous return? Position supine and elevate lower limbs (e.g. pillows).
  - Lie in lateral position if pregnant.
4. Is the patient bleeding? If so attempt to:
  - Control haemorrhage – dressings, packing cavities, pressure bandages, suturing. Expedite transfer to surgeon.
  - Replace blood loss. Blood is preferable but sometimes not accessible. Two large bore IV lines (14 or 16 gauge) should be inserted and give Normal Saline (0.9% saline), Hartmann's solution or colloid (e.g. gelofusine). Infuse rapidly at first (e.g. 500mL over 15 minutes) and continue until blood pressure improves, then reduce the rate.
5. Is the patient dehydrated?
  - Replace fluids. Insert at least one large bore IV cannula. Give a bolus of crystalloid (e.g. normal saline) or colloid (e.g. gelofusine) until blood pressure improves, then continue fluid replacement at a slower rate.



6. Is there reduced vascular tone?

- Manage anaphylaxis with adrenaline and fluids. (See [Anaphylaxis](#)).
- Manage septicaemia with fluids, antibiotics as indicated and inotropes if necessary. Inotropic infusions should only be used on doctor-accompanied flights. (See [Severe Sepsis](#) ).
- Manage spinal cord injury with supine position and modest fluid replacement, may require vasopressors. (See [Acute Spinal Cord Injuries](#) ).

7. Is there reduced cardiac output?

- Manage acute left ventricular failure (pulmonary oedema) with oxygen, upright posture, frusemide and fluid restriction. (See [Acute Pulmonary Oedema](#) ).
- Manage arrhythmias. (See [Cardiac Arrhythmias](#)).
- Manage impaired venous return with patient positioning or reduction in intrathoracic pressure (e.g. reduce ventilator pressures, PEEP or release tension pneumothorax).

### ***Medical Chest Items***

Adrenaline ampoules 1: 1000, 1mL (Item 99).

### ***References***

Bersten A, Soni N. Oh's Intensive Care Manual. 6th ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009.

## 8.5 Vascular Catastrophes

### Theory

#### Ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA)

1. Mortality 65-85%, 50% before reaching the operating theatre, making for precarious long distance aeromedical transfers.
2. Ruptured AAA heralded by triad of sudden onset mid-abdominal, flank or back pain (+/- scrotal radiation), shock and presence of pulsatile mass.
3. Degree of shock determined by location and size of rupture. A biphasic response may occur with an initial tear into retroperitoneal space followed by larger rupture hours later.
4. Emergency ultrasound 97% sensitive in diagnosis of AAA.

#### Aortic dissection

1. Most common aortic catastrophe: 2-3 x more common than ruptured AAA.
2. Associated with high mortality; particularly where diagnosis / transfer delayed.
3. Diagnosis can be difficult; estimated 38% of acute aortic dissections missed on initial evaluation.
4. Consideration dissection with any combination of:
  - Abrupt onset of thoracic or abdominal pain with sharp, tearing +/- ripping character.
  - Mediastinal +/- aortic widening on CXR.
  - Variation in pulse (absence of proximal extremity or carotid pulse) +/- BP (>20mmHg difference between right and left upper limbs).
  - Aortic incompetence.
5. Caution should be exercised with anticoagulation / thrombolysis if aortic dissection forms part of the differential diagnosis for presentations of atypical ischaemic chest pain.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

#### General Principles:

1. Expeditious transfer. Priority 1, doctor accompanied.
2. Minimise investigations and procedures at referring hospital. Patient needs definitive vascular / cardiothoracic management.
3. Large bore IV access, monitoring (invasive blood pressure useful but should not delay transfer), indwelling catheter.
4. Consider need for blood products and reversal of anticoagulation.
5. Avoid hypothermia.
6. Aim for a quick airport handover (including an escort from the referring doctor).

#### Ruptured AAA

1. Avoid excessive fluid resuscitation (risk of loss of tamponade, stable retroperitoneal haematoma becoming free intraperitoneal haemorrhage).
2. Aim for systolic blood pressure 90-100mmHg

## Aortic Dissection

1. Control of blood pressure and heart rate essential to reduce shear stress on arterial wall (decreases propagation, tamponade rupture):
  - Adequate analgesia – IV morphine
  - $\beta$  blocker – metoprolol 2.5-5mg IV boluses, or esmolol 0.5-1mg IV boluses; calcium channel blocker if  $\beta$  blocker contraindicated.
  - Nitroprusside infusion 2<sup>nd</sup> line. Difficulties with delivery (light sensitive) and availability, use with  $\beta$  blocker to avoid reflex tachycardia.
2. Aims: HR 60-80, BP 100-120 or lowest BP commensurate with vital organ perfusion.
3. Pericardiocentesis for tamponade may make things worse.

## References

Sakalihasan N, Limet R, Defwe O. Abdominal Aortic Aneurysm. *Lancet*.2005; vol 365, issue 9470,1577-1589.

Hagan P, Nienaber C, Isselbacher E, et al. The International Registry of Acute Aortic Dissection: New insights into an old disease. *JAMA* 2000; 283:p897-903

Isselbacher E, Cigarroa J, Eagle K. Cardiac tamponade complicating proximal aortic dissection. Is pericardiocentesis harmful? *Circulation*. 1994;90:2375-2378.

## 8.6 Transfusion Medicine

### Theory

1. An adequate haemoglobin is an essential element for oxygen delivery to the tissues. Haemoglobin is usually replaced by transfusing packed red blood cells (PRBC).
2. Clotting factors may be depleted or ineffectual due to a number of reasons; drugs (e.g. warfarin), toxins (e.g. snake bite envenomation), inadequate production (eg. liver failure, excessive consumption (e.g. disseminated intravascular coagulation), dilution of factors (e.g. major haemorrhage). Replacement clotting factors may be given in the forms of fresh frozen plasma (FFP) , prothrombinex –HT, fibrinogen concentrate (cryoprecipitate), recombinant Factor VIIa. (See below for what product to use in what circumstances).
3. Platelets play an important role in coagulation and may be depleted by bone marrow failure, auto-immune destruction or dilution.
4. A number of drugs are used for the reversal of anticoagulation or as antifibrinolytics; Vitamin K – role in activation of factors II, VII, IX,&X. Tranexamic acid – antifibrinolytic may have a role in major trauma. Protamine sulphate – for heparin reversal.
5. Using blood products must be weighed against potential adverse effects:
  - Transfusion related circulatory overload
  - Transmission of blood borne pathogens
  - Immune reactions
  - Transfusion related lung injury
  - Increase in plasma viscosity

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

#### Securing blood products

- Wherever possible utilise crossed matched products from the hospital of origin, when assessing patients pre-flight ensure that the appropriate products are ordered and packed to accompany the patient.
- If cross matched products will not be available it may be necessary to transport products from the base to the patient. In Jandakot 4 units of O negative PRBC are kept on site as is a supply of prothrombinex, above this products can be sourced from Red Cross Blood Transfusion Service (make phone request to their duty Haematologist and send faxed order form (appendix), available in RFDS Operations Centre). At rural bases blood products need to be sourced from the local hospital (See appendix with state wide product supplies).
- FFP availability may be limited in rural areas and significant delays can be incurred awaiting thawing, order early.
- For priority 1 flights the police will deliver blood products to Jandakot airport.
- For flights inbound to Jandakot or meeting Jandakot crews elsewhere in the state additional blood products can be arranged to meet the patient. Please contact the duty Clinical Coordinator to arrange.
- Note platelets are not available outside the metropolitan area unless we transport them to the patient.

## Indications for blood products

Table 7. Indications for blood products

| Product                       | Clinical Circumstances  | Transfusion Targets  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Packed Red Blood Cells</b> | Well perfused, resuscitated, no end organ failure.  | Hb 70g/L   |
|                               | Evidence of end organ failure (e.g. myocardial ischaemia, raised lactate)   | Hb 100g/L  |
|                               | Severe sepsis   | Hct > 30%  |
| <b>Fresh Frozen Plasma</b>    | Coagulopathy of any cause <b>with</b> evidence of significant bleeding (significant either due to volume of bleeding or location e.g. intracranial) | Administer FFP 15mL/kg   |
|                               | Coagulopathy of any cause <b>without</b> evidence of significant bleeding.  | <i>Use of FFP controversial.</i><br>Consider if transporting patient for procedure at high risk of bleeding (e.g. emergency surgery). <i>Seek expert advice.</i> |
| <b>Platelets</b>              | Evidence of active bleeding.  | Aim platelets > 100,000  |
|                               | At risk of bleeding (e.g. trauma, perioperative)  | Aim platelets > 80,000   |
|                               | No specific risk of bleeding.   | Aim platelets > 12,000   |
|                               | History of anti-platelet use (e.g. clopidogrel, NSAID) with <i>intracranial haemorrhage</i> .   | Consider platelet transfusion regardless of platelet count.  |
|                               | Thrombocytopaenia secondary to auto-immune disease (e.g. idiopathic thrombocytopaenic purpura)  | Platelet transfusion not indicated.  |

**Get specialist advice when dealing with pregnancy, liver disease, children and haematological disorders.**

### Note

Australian Red Cross Blood Service Ph: (08) 9421 2846 to speak to a consultant haematologist about use and to request supply of products or release of major haemorrhage pack. A proforma for faxing to ARCBS is kept on file near the Clinical Co-ordinator's desk.

### References

Rivers E, Nguyen B, Havstad S, et al. Early Goal Directed Therapy in the Treatment of Severe Sepsis and Septic Shock. *N Eng J Med*. 2001; 345:1368-1377.

Shiroff A, Sarani B. When is transfusion therapy indicated in critical illness and when is it not. In: Deutschman C, Neligan P editors. Evidence Based Practice of Critical Care. Elsevier. 2010.

Australian Red Cross Blood Service

Uncontrolled When Printed

**Request for Blood Components - EMERGENCY**

ARCBS-WA-DIS-L3-023

Version: 001

**FAX** order to the Blood Service: (08) 9221 1215 or (08) 9421 2847**I&D Phone:** : (08) 9325 3030 or  
(08) 9421 2869

|  |   |             |
|--|---|-------------|
| AHP:<br><b>ROYAL FLYING DOCTORS SERVICE</b>  | Code:<br><b>61BRFD</b>  | Date:       |
| Date / Time Required:<br>Police Escort <input type="checkbox"/> Courier / Taxi <input type="checkbox"/>  | Order Prioritisation:<br><b>Life Threatening</b> <input type="checkbox"/> | Ordered by: |
| <b>***LOCATION FOR DELIVERY***</b><br>Jandakot <input type="checkbox"/> Requesting Doctor:<br>Maroomba Airways (near Fauntleroy Ave Domestic Terminal) <input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Number: |   |             |
| <b>Blood Service Use Only:</b>   |   |             |
| Delivery Details:  |   |             |
| Order #:   | Taken by:   |             |

| <b>***EMERGENCY SUPPLY***</b>  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
| <b>Components</b>  |  |  |  |
| Red Cells  | <b>O NEGATIVE</b><br>K NEG<br>rr (if avail)  | Amount<br>_____  | I&D: Pack Configuration<br><b>R4</b>       |
| Platelets  | <b>Group O</b><br>POOL<br>or<br>APHERESIS<br>(Low titre anti-A/B)<br><b>Irradiated</b> | Amount<br>_____  | I&D: Pack Configuration<br><b>P2</b>       |
| Fresh Frozen Plasma (FFP)  | <b>Group AB*</b><br><b>Thawed</b>  | Amount<br>_____  | I&D (RPH): Pack Configuration<br><b>R4</b> |
| Additional Comments:   |  |  |  |
| Blood Service (I&D) use only:<br>Refer to TMS On-Call Specialist if order exceeds 6 x red cells, 2 x platelets or 6 x cFFP or clinical advice sought |  |  |  |
| TMS Specialist / On-call Haematologist contacted<br>(if not available – Customer Service Delivery Mgr)   |  | TMS Sp / Haem Name:<br>I&D Staff Name:<br>Date & Time contacted: |  |
| *Contact RPH to prepare and pack thawed AB cFFP  |  | Yes / Not required   |  |

Original Doc. ID: 251896 / 251896

Controlled Copy No.:

Effective Date: 22/04/2013

Page 1 of 1

Figure 16. Request for Blood Components - EMERGENCY

Location of WA Inventory: January 2011

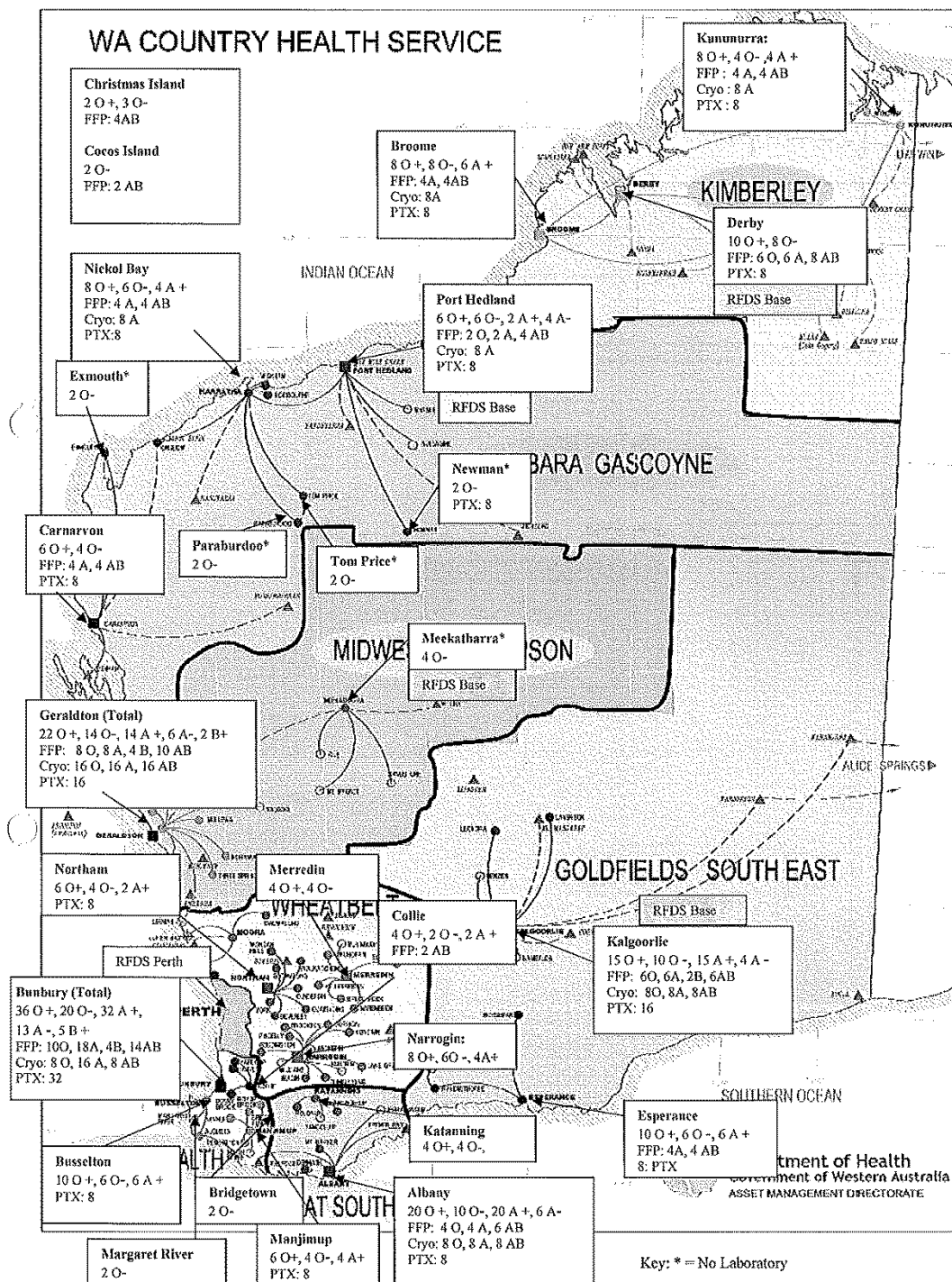


Figure 17. WACHS Locations

## 8.7 Major Haemorrhage

### Theory

1. Patients at risk of requiring massive transfusion should be identified early:
  - Haemostasis unlikely to be achieved at current location (e.g. Pelvic fracture, ruptured aortic aneurysm, variceal haemorrhage)
  - Prolonged PT / INR (either pharmacological or pathological)
  - Systolic BP < 110mmHg
  - Base deficit > 6
  - Hb <110 g/L
2. Early definitive haemostasis is the single most important factor in improving survival of patients with major haemorrhage. Staging patients via a regional centre with surgical facilities maybe required to achieve haemostasis, in consultation with regional and tertiary centres.
3. Ongoing resuscitation should include measures to avoid hypothermia, acidosis and coagulopathy.
4. Hypotension in the bleeding patient is primarily due to hypovolaemia and should be treated with volume replacement. There is little role for inotropes or vasopressors unless other causes of hypotension suspected (e.g. sepsis, myocardial injury)
5. The role of permissive hypotension has only been of proven benefit in penetrating trauma in an urban environment thus doesn't apply to most RFDS patients, it is contraindicated in the presence of a concurrent brain injury.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Declare major haemorrhage early. These patients will be assessed as Priority 1 doctor accompanied patients.
2. Attend to airway, oxygenation and adequate access ( 2x large bore IV cannulae, or IO access).
3. Investigations FBP, Coagulation profile, ABG or VBG, lactate and cross match.
4. Volume resuscitation, crystalloids first line, early initiation of packed red cells.
5. Arrange supply of blood products; referring hospital, nurse manager of base hospital if flying from Derby, Port Hedland, Meekatharra or Kalgoorlie, or RCBTS if flying from Jandakot (See 8.6 [Transfusion Medicine](#))
6. Minimise time to definitive care / haemostasis by avoiding "going in" if airway breathing and adequate access managed. Maintain good communication with receiving hospitals to ensure appropriate reception (e.g. straight to theatre)
7. Correct and prevent coagulopathy:
  - Secure supply of FFP / arrange thawing and transport.
  - Aim to achieve PRBC : FFP ratio of 1:1 but don't delay use of PRBC to awaiting FFP
  - Monitor for and correct  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  levels.
  - Correct warfarin induced coagulopathy – vitamin K 10mg and prothrombinex 50 units /kg.
  - Discuss with haematologist (Red Cross) regarding tranexamic acid, cryoprecipitate, prothrombinex.



- Consider platelet transfusion – discuss with duty haematologist, only available from Perth.
  - Consider tranexamic acid 1g over 10min within the first three hours of trauma likely to result in massive haemorrhage followed by 1g over the next 8 hours.
8. Correct and prevent acidosis.
- Optimise tissue oxygenation (ensure Hb > 8g/dL, SBP >110 mm Hg, SpO<sub>2</sub> > 98%), arterial line and IDC useful for monitoring tissue perfusion.
  - If using large volumes crystalloid CSL is preferable to normal saline in terms of preventing hyperchloraemic acidosis.
  - Avoid hypercapnoea (may need mechanical ventilation if patient hypoventilating).
  - Monitor Blood Gases and lactate if available.
9. Correct and Prevent Hypothermia
- Actively warm patient.
  - Use warm IV fluids and blood products.

### ***Special Notes***

In the setting of massive transfusion access to blood products and haematology advice should be co-ordinated via the duty haematologist at Australian Red Cross Blood Service, they have knowledge of the State's blood product supplies and for flights out of Jandakot can authorise the release of the RPH "Major Haemorrhage Pack" (4 units packed cells and 4 units pre-thawed FFP). Phone (08) 9421 2846. A request form for blood products is on file at the Clinical Co-ordinator's desk in the RFDS Operations Centre at Jandakot.

### ***References***

National Blood Authority. Patient Blood Management Guidelines: Module 1. Critical Bleeding Massive Haemorrhage. Australian Government 2011

## 8.8 Reversal of Anticoagulation

### Theory

1. A number of pharmacological agents used in both the acute and long term setting may increase the propensity to bleeding. These include warfarin, heparin, thrombolytic agents and anti-platelets agents (including aspirin, clopidogrel and NSAID) and now a new generation of oral anticoagulants (Dabigatran, Rivaroxaban, Apixaban)
2. Warfarin inhibits the synthesis of vitamin K dependent clotting factors (II, VII, IX & X). Heparin acts primarily by deactivation of thrombin, preventing conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin clots. The NSAIDs and clopidogrel inhibit platelet adhesion by various mechanisms. Thrombolytic agents stimulate the activity of plasmin thereby enhancing the breakdown of formed clots. The mechanism of action for the new generation oral anticoagulants includes direct thrombin inhibition (Dabigatran) and direct Factor Xa inhibition (Rivaroxaban and Apixaban).
3. The following patient groups should be considered at risk of the bleeding complications of anticoagulant medications:

Table 8. Patient Groups at Risk of Bleeding Complications

| Risk Factor Category       | Specific Risk Factors  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Age                        | >65 years  |
| Cardiac                    | Uncontrolled hypertension  |
| Gastrointestinal           | History of GIT haemorrhage, active peptic ulcer disease, hepatic insufficiency                             |
| Haematological/oncological | Thrombocytopaenia (platelet count<50,000), platelet dysfunction, coagulation defect, underlying malignancy |
| Neurological               | History of stroke, cognitive or psychological impairment   |
| Renal                      | Renal insufficiency  |
| Alcohol                    | Excessive alcohol intake   |
| Trauma                     | Recent trauma, history of falls  |
| Medications                | Aspirin, NSAIDs.   |

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

#### Warfarin

Table 9. Warfarin Pre-flight and In-flight Management

| Clinical Setting  | Action   |
|---|--|
| INR higher than therapeutic range but <5.0; Bleeding absent                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lower the dose or omit the next dose of Warfarin. Resume therapy at a lower dose when the INR approaches therapeutic range</li> <li>• If the INR is only minimally above therapeutic range (&lt;10%), dose reduction may not be necessary.</li> </ul>   |
| INR 5.0-9.0; Bleeding absent. (N.B. bleeding risk increases exponentially from INR 5-9) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cease warfarin therapy, consider reasons for elevated INR and patient specific factors.</li> <li>• If bleeding risk is high, give vitamin K (1.0-2.0mg orally or 0.5-1.0mg IV).</li> <li>• Measure INR within 24 hrs; resume warfarin at reduced dose when INR within therapeutic range.</li> </ul> |

Table 9. Warfarin Pre-flight and In-flight Management (cont'd)

| Clinical Setting  | Action  |
|---|---|
| INR >9.0; bleeding absent   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Where there is low risk of bleeding, cease warfarin therapy, give 2.5-5.0mg vitamin K orally or 1.0mg IV. Measure INR in 6-12 hours, resume warfarin therapy at reduced dose once INR &lt;5.0</li> <li>Where there is high risk of bleeding (see table above), cease warfarin therapy, give 1.0mg vitamin K IV. Consider prothrombinex-HT (25 IU/kg) and fresh frozen plasma (where available) (150-300 mL), measure INR in 6-12 hours.</li> </ul> |
| Any clinically significant bleeding where warfarin induced coagulopathy is considered a contributing factor | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cease warfarin therapy, give 5.0-10.0 vitamin K IV plus prothrombinex-HT 25IU/kg and FFP (150-300 mL). OR</li> <li>If FFP is unavailable, cease warfarin therapy, give 5.0-10mg vitamin K and prothrombinex-HT 25IU/kg. OR</li> <li>If prothrombinex-HT is unavailable, give 5.0-10mg vitamin K and 10-15mL/kg of FFP</li> </ul>   |

### Heparin

- The anticoagulant effects of Heparin may be reversed with protamine sulphate. Dose of protamine is dependent of dose of heparin to be reversed. **Maximum protamine dose, regardless of heparin dose, is 50mg.**
- Protamine may precipitate cardiovascular collapse if administered rapidly (minimum **infusion time – 10 minutes**). It is derived from fish sperm and therefore patients with known hypersensitivity to fish may be at risk of reaction to Protamine.
- Low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) e.g. enoxaparin – If within 8 hours of LMWH administration, use 1mg of protamine per 100 **units** of LMWH (consult LMWH product literature for number of units per mg – enoxaparin 100u/mg). If over 8 hours since LMWH administration, use 0.5mg of protamine per 100 **units** of LMWH.
- Unfractionated heparin – 1mg protamine neutralises 100 units of unfractionated heparin when given within 15 minutes of heparin. If longer than 15 mins, less protamine may be required. Consult product literature for further information.

### Post thrombolytic haemorrhage (major haemorrhage or intracerebral haemorrhage)

- Manage as per major haemorrhage of other causes.
- There is no specific agent for reversal of thrombolysis.
- Be aware that a source of fibrinogen replacement may be required and therefore locate FFP or cryoprecipitate.
- Many patients receiving thrombolysis will also receive heparin and anti-platelet agents – these may also require reversal.

### Anti-platelet agents

- There is limited evidence relating to the use of platelet infusions in the management of significant haemorrhage on anti-platelet agents.
- Discuss with on-call haematologist.

### New generation oral anticoagulants

- There are no specific antidotes for these drugs and management of bleeding complex, haematology advice should be sought.
- Cease the drug.
- Where possible perform full coagulation profile, this will help a haematologist guide management)

- Employ local haemostatic measures. (Compression, surgical, radiological)
- Maintain hydration to aid drug clearance.
- Transfusion support with PRBC, platelets if platelet count < 50 x 10<sup>9</sup>/L or antiplatelet agent in use.
- Consider access to dialysis for Digabattran.
- Consider Prothrombinex (25-50 IU/kg), recombinant factor VIIa (90µg/kg every 2hrs), tranexamic acid (15-30mg/kg IV) for mucosal bleeds. Any of these should involve consultation with a haematologist.

## References

Baker R, Coughlin P, Gallus A, et al. Warfarin Reversal: consensus guidelines on behalf of the Australasian Society of Thrombosis and Haemostasis. *MJA*. 181(9):492-497. 2004.

Bersten A, Soni N. *Oh's Intensive Care Manual*. 6th ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009.

Shiroff A, Sarani B. When is transfusion therapy indicated in critical illness and when is it not? In: Deutschman C, Neligan P editors. *Evidence Based Practice of Critical Care*. Elsevier. 2010.

Tran H, Joseph J, Young L, et al. New Oral Anticoagulant – A practical guide on behalf of the Australasian Society of Thrombosis and Haemostasis (ASTH)

[http://www.asth.org.au/downloads/NOAC\\_practical\\_guideline\\_FINAL\\_24062013v4\\_2.pdf](http://www.asth.org.au/downloads/NOAC_practical_guideline_FINAL_24062013v4_2.pdf)

Accessed 19/03/2014

## 8.9 Mass Casualty Incidents

### Theory

1. A Mass Casualty Incident (MCI) is defined as a situation where the event overwhelms the available resources. Sometimes it is immediately obvious that a disaster has occurred, but sometimes it only becomes apparent as further information comes in. Once a MCI has been declared, the methodology defined here comes into place, and this supersedes our usual RFDS mode of operation until the disaster has been completely dealt with.
2. The RFDS is an essential component of the overall Health Response to MCI in regional and remote WA. The Major Incident Medical Management and Support course (MIMMS) is used as a basis for planning, training and response to MCI's in WA. The Emergency Management Act 2005 provides for the prompt and co-ordinated organisation of emergency management in the State. The RFDS and ambulance services are support agencies to the Department of Health.

### RFDS Response

1. The primary role of the RFDS is to provide prompt advanced medical support at the scene or casualty clearing post (CCP) (this may be the nearest hospital), and collect accurate intelligence from the scene to provide back to the SHICC. RFDS MIMMS trained personnel will be assigned specific tasks to assist with command, control and communication. These roles may be on scene (Bronze level), at a command post or CCP (Silver level), or within the RFDS Co-ordination Centre or SHICC (Gold level).
2. RFDS will be tasked with co-ordinating transport of casualties by aeromedical assets.
3. ***RFDS Medical and Nursing staff first on scene of a MCI MUST NOT involve themselves with treatment or transport of casualties until a complete scene assessment and triage has been completed. This information must be recorded and relayed to SHICC (via RFDS SHICC Liaison Doctor or Clinical Co-ordinator).***
4. All RFDS teams arriving on scene must report to the Health Commander for briefing, checking safety equipment and allocation of duties, upon completion of task report back for re-tasking. RFDS staff should not agree to tasks requested by other agencies without consent of their Health Commander.
5. The structure used for defining roles, priorities and chain of command is summarized as CSCATTT.

.Table 10. Mass Casualty Incident Chain of Command

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>Command &amp; Control</b></p>   | <p>Command is vertical, know where you are in the health chain of command, to whom you report and who is reporting to you.</p> <p>Control is horizontal across agencies and in most instances will be held by the Police. Requests for resources or assistance from other agencies should be sent up your chain of command to the Health Commander who will liaise with Commanders from other agencies. Failure to adhere to these lines of communication will result in chaos.</p> <p>Command may occur at three levels:</p> |
| <p><b>Bronze:</b> Ambulance forward Commander and ambulance teams (<b>RFDS forward team*</b> may be assigned to AFC to assist, must report to AFC on entry and egress)</p>  | <p><b>Bronze</b> at the incident site. Usually this will be managed by ambulance services.</p>  |
| <p><b>Silver:</b></p> <p>Incident control centre (ICC) manned by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Police Command.</li> <li>• Ambulance Commander (AC) and <b>Health Commander (HC)*</b> (either WACHS or 1<sup>st</sup> RFDS Dr on scene depending on experience and MIMMS training.</li> <li>• Ambulance Loading Officer reports to AC.</li> <li>• HC reports to SHICC and stays on site. Not involved in patient treatment.</li> <li>• Fire Command.</li> </ul> <p>Casualty Clearing Post (CCP) manned by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Senior Doctor*</b> (RFDS or WACHS), ideally not involved in patient treatment rather supervision and resourcing of teams, and patient flow.</li> <li>• Casualty Clearing Officer (ambulance).</li> <li>• <b>Triage nurse.*</b></li> <li>• <b>Treating doctor/nurse teams.*</b></li> </ul> | <p><b>Silver</b> usually in close proximity to incident site however may utilize local nursing post or hospital, location where commanders and CCP will be set up. Access controlled by police. This is the usual level at which our staff will work, we are responsible for forwarding intelligence to Gold level command.</p>   |
| <p><b>Gold:</b> State Health Incident Control Centre (SHICC), may or may not be convened at Royal St depending on nature of incident. RFDS should send <b>liaison doctor*</b> (usually Director of Medical Services or his delegate), works with duty <b>RFDS Clinical Co-Ordinator*</b> to ensure patients transported to destinations determined by SHICC.</p>  | <p><b>Gold</b> at an administrative level remote from the location e.g. SHICC (e.g. State Health Incident Control Centre set up in Health Dept). Allocation of patients to various hospitals occurs at this level, there is no direct referral of patients by treating doctors to receiving hospitals.</p>  |

Table 10: Mass Casualty Incident Chain of Command (cont'd)

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>Safety</b>        | Ensure safety of self, scene and survivors. The police will determine if the scene is safe to enter and may delegate scene safety to another agency, e.g. FESA.<br><br>Admission to scenes may be declined if not appropriately clad (See PPE).  |
| <b>Communication</b> | Determine how communication will occur and check the devices to be used (e.g. mobile phone, satellite phone, UHF radio). Do you know how to use your equipment, do you have back up power sources, do you know your call sign? Is RAVEN to be deployed?  |
| <b>Assessment</b>    | This is a process of gathering information and determining what resources will be required to tackle the problem. See ETHANE report. Work with AC in determining suitable location for CCP.  |
| <b>Triage</b>        | Triage will occur at many levels but it is important to use a consistent approach. The first level of triage (sieve) is to determine a priority for moving patients from the scene to a casualty clearing post. On arrival at a casualty clearing post the next level of triage (sort) determines a priority for treatment (See triage notes). |
| <b>Treatment</b>     | Treatment is generally confined to that essential to enable safe transport to a receiving hospital (clearly long transport times dictate more comprehensive treatment).  |
| <b>Transport</b>     | A further element of triage occurs in determining order and mode of transport. Ensure that the right patient gets to the right place in the right time. Where patients go is determined by SHICC.  |

- There is a structure for conveying information upwards to senior command and downwards when briefing staff, this is known as the ETHANE or METHANE report.
  - M** Major incident (may be declared, on standby, or stood down).
  - E** Exact location of incident (this may be of vital importance in the event that someone is reporting an incident in a primary location), GPS co-ordinates, nearest intersection, nearest airfield etc.
  - T** Type of incident (e.g. bus roll over, passenger train derailment).
  - H** Hazards present (fire, chemical, weather, traffic etc.).
  - A** Access to the site (how should emergency services get there).
  - N** Number and type of casualties.
  - E** Emergency services present and resources required.
- When RFDS staff are tasked to a mass casualty incident, they will be given an **action card** outlining their individual role and to whom they report. Potential roles are marked above with \*.



3. It is expected that RFDS staff will be attired in appropriate Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) for the task they are to undertake. This will include high visibility tabard identifying their role and agency. Hat (if necessary hard hat), sunscreen / insect repellent, long sleeved shirt, trousers with pockets and knee pads, glasses. Protective gloves may also be required on occasion.
4. St John Ambulance have mass casualty kits that may be loaded onto aircraft and transported to scene, these generally have equipment to triage and provide basic treatment to 20 casualties.
5. Given the remoteness of potential locations for mass casualty events there may be much less man power than is typically described in the medical management of such incidents, this will mean that RFDS staff may have to take on more than one role.
6. Once a major incident has been declared by SHICC, the principal communication platform used by all agencies is the WEB EOC (<https://myeoc.health.gov.au>). Login name and passwords are issued by the DPMU policy officer, Gary Shearer (08 9222 2428).  
Log in with your name and password and navigate to the relevant incident.
7. Keep your mobile phone switched on, but avoid all unnecessary calls to the coordination centre and SHICC.

### Triage

In a mass casualty incident the aim is to do the most for the most, this will involve a departure from usual modes of operation. Two triage tools have been designed to ensure a consistent and reproducible approach.

**Triage Sieve:** This prioritises patients for removal from the scene based on mobility then breathing and circulation. This may be performed by ambulance staff plus or minus a forward medical team. It is vital that a record is kept of numbers of patients triaged and what category, this should be fed back to any forward command and medical command to ensure appropriate resources assigned.

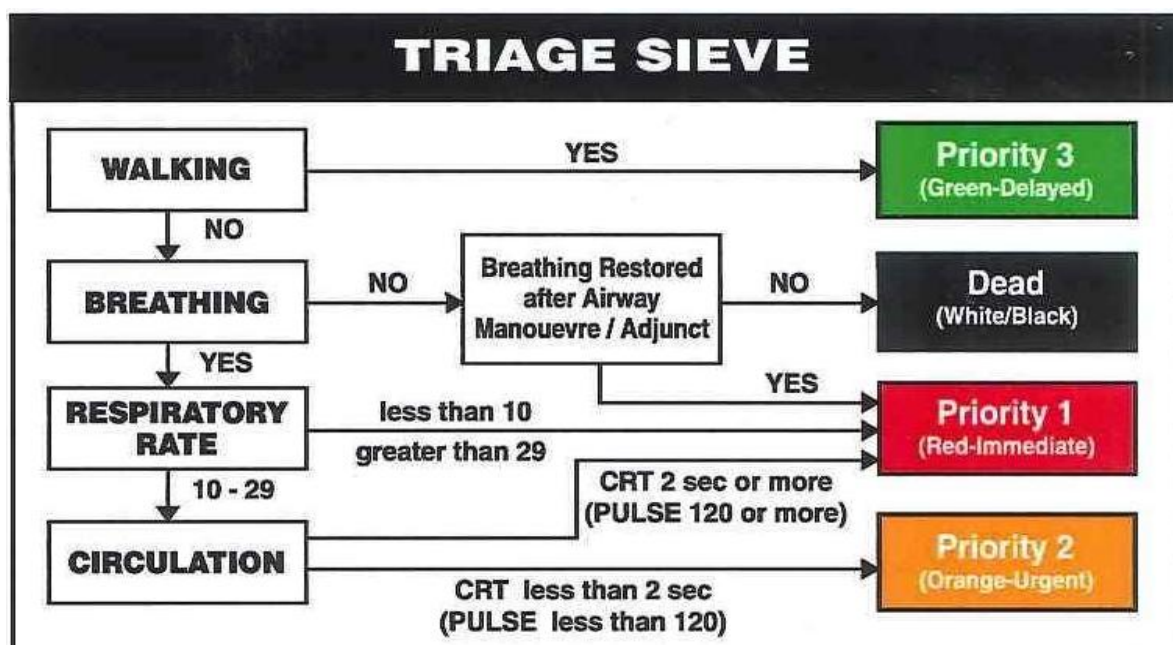


Figure 18. Triage Sieve



**Triage Sort:** This prioritises patients for treatment, this triage occurs on entry to the Casualty Clearing Post and is based on physiological parameters and a scoring system.

| TRIAGE                    |              | SORT                               |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>GLASGOW COMA SCORE</b> |              | <b>TRIAGE REVISED TRAUMA SCORE</b> |                    |
| <b>EYE OPENING</b>        | <b>Score</b> | <b>GLASGOW COMA SCORE</b>          | <b>Coded Value</b> |
| Spontaneous               | 4            | 13 - 15                            | 4                  |
| To voice                  | 3            | 9 - 12                             | 3                  |
| To pain                   | 2            | 6 - 8                              | 2                  |
| None                      | 1            | 4 - 5                              | 1                  |
|                           |              | 3                                  | 0                  |
| <b>VERBAL RESPONSE</b>    | <b>Score</b> | <b>RESPIRATORY RATE</b>            |                    |
| Oriented                  | 5            | 10- 29                             | 4                  |
| Confused                  | 4            | greater than 29                    | 3                  |
| Inappropriate words       | 3            | 6 - 9                              | 2                  |
| Incomprehensible sounds   | 2            | 1 - 5                              | 1                  |
| None                      | 1            | 0                                  | 0                  |
| <b>MOTOR RESPONSE</b>     | <b>Score</b> | <b>SYSTOLIC BLOOD PRESSURE</b>     |                    |
| Obeys commands            | 6            | greater than 89                    | 4                  |
| Localises to pain         | 5            | 76 - 89                            | 3                  |
| Withdraws to pain         | 4            | 50 - 75                            | 2                  |
| Flexes to pain            | 3            | 1 - 49                             | 1                  |
| Extends to pain           | 2            | 0                                  | 0                  |
| None                      | 1            | <b>PRIORITY SCORE</b>              |                    |
|                           |              | IMMEDIATE                          | 1 - 10             |
|                           |              | URGENT                             | 11                 |
|                           |              | DELAYED                            | 12                 |
|                           |              | EXPECTANT                          | 1 - 3              |

Figure 19. Triage Sort

A “SMART TAG” triage and tracking system was introduced into WA early 2012, and is the standard identification system used by the receiving hospitals, SJA and ourselves. Stocks are held at each base. The barcode system is not yet in use.

### Patient Flow

The ideal flow of patients from an incident site is represented below.

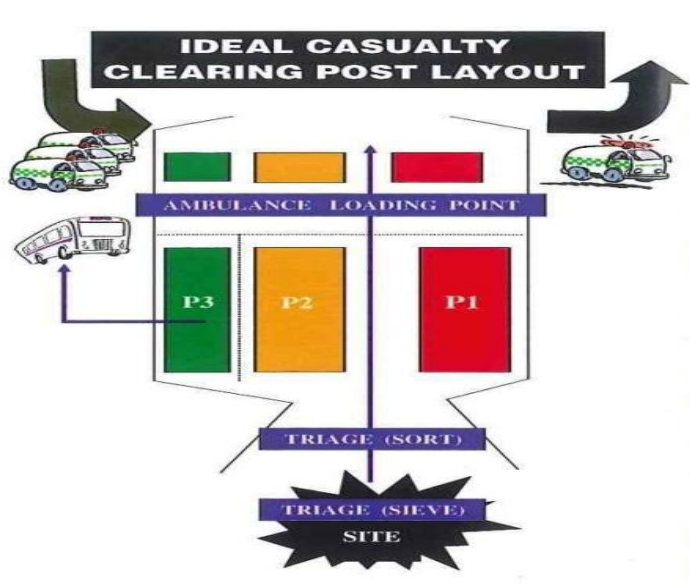


Figure 20. Patient Flow

### References

Advanced Life Support Group. *Major Incident Medical Management and Support*. 2<sup>nd</sup> Ed, 2002. BMJ Publishing.

## 8.10 Morbid Obesity

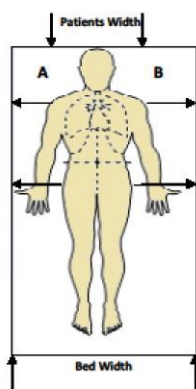
### Theory

1. Morbidly obese patients pose a challenge in aeromedical transport. The increased size of patients is often more relevant than their weight.
2. Clinical considerations in transport are particularly related to:
  - respiratory function (hypoventilation and respiratory failure, particularly when supine);
  - airway and ventilation (difficulty with intubation and mechanical ventilation);
  - underlying cardiovascular disease (exacerbated by hypoxia and hypercapnia);
  - difficulty with procedures (vascular access, urinary catheterization, splinting);
  - difficult patient examination and clinical assessment; and
  - general patient handling in flight.
3. Operational considerations include stretcher dimensions, transferring patients between stretchers and vehicles, safe restraint, loading and unloading procedures, aircraft weight & balance, emergency egress, and range & payload restrictions.
4. AFTS stretchers (as used in the PC-12) are certified to carry an occupant of any weight once secured in the aircraft, however for ground handling (pushing around with legs extended) a safe maximum of 180kg is recommended. The AFTS or Barker SLD (Stretcher Loading Device) is certified to a safe working load of 160kg - 180kg patient weight (subject to model), however heavier patients can be lifted if manual-lifting assistance is provided. The most common issue is whether the patient will fit on the stretcher rather than weight.
5. The LifePort stretchers (found in the Rio Tinto LifeFlight Hawker 800XP jet) are certified for an occupant of any weight, but limited in practice to patients of 130kg maximum due to stretcher dimensions and loading considerations.
6. St John Ambulance Ferno 50-E stretchers (fluoro yellow undercarriage) have a 230kg patient safe working load and 56cm width. Some older Ferno 50 stretchers found in country ambulances have a SWL of 159kg. A special Complex Patient Transport Vehicle (CPTV) is available in Perth and able to transfer patients up to 500kg.
7. The RFDS Bariatric Transport System (BTS) can be retrofitted to any PC-12 in the fleet. It enables a patient of up to 285kg in weight and potentially 100cm in width or 200cm in length, to be loaded into our aircraft and safely restrained in flight.
8. In addition to clinical management decisions, the critical decisions to be made by retrieval doctors are:
  - whether the patient is suitable for RFDS air transport at all (road retrieval in the CPTV should be considered for patients within 200-300km of Perth, with or without an RFDS team); and
  - if the patient can be managed on an AFTS stretcher, or needs the BTS.

### Pre-flight Assessment

1. Obtain all clinical details relevant to the underlying referral for transport. Determine if aeromedical transport is necessary in accordance with established preflight assessment guidelines.
2. Obtain an accurate patient weight. Where possible, patients should be weighed. If not possible, determine how the estimated weight was derived and seek supporting evidence. The best estimate of weight is usually provided by asking the patient. Alternatively, estimations based on arm circumference and height can be calculated.
  - Women (kg) =  $(2.15 \times \text{arm circumference in cm}) - 64.6 + (0.54 \times \text{height in cm})$
  - Men (kg) =  $(3.29 \times \text{arm circumference in cm}) - 93.2 + (0.43 \times \text{height in cm})$

3. Obtain an assessment of the patient's size and decide whether they can be carried on an AFTS stretcher.
  - Did they come in by ambulance? If the patient fits on a St John Ferno 50 stretcher, they should fit a standard RFDS stretcher.
  - Patient width can be obtained by measuring the bed width, then subtracting the distance from bed edge to iliac crests or hips or shoulders, on each side. (Measuring across the abdomen is inaccurate).
  - Obtain photos by SMS or email, to assist you in making a decision.



*Measure the bed width.*

*Measure the bed-edge to shoulder and bed-edge to iliac crest or hip distance on each side.*

*Subtract these (A+B) from the bed width.*

*If the largest patient dimension is > 68cm then transfer on a standard Ferno or AFTS stretcher will be unlikely.*

Figure 21. Obese Patient Measurement

4. As a guide, consider the BTS for patients over 150kg in weight, where it is reported that the patient is very large, or they exceed the dimensions above. For borderline cases, there are operational impacts to consider, including:
  - delays to install the BTS;
  - inability to carry a second patient; and
  - inability to divert a crew already in flight.
5. Make a clear decision and inform the Coordination Centre whether a standard aircraft is suitable, or the BTS is required. Negotiate any operational issues.
6. Confirm if there is a need for the retrieval team to go in to the hospital, or the patient can be brought to the airport by ambulance. Brief the flight nurse and pilot if there are queries.
7. If there are any clinical, operational or equipment issues, contact the Director of Medical Service (DMS) or delegate for guidance. Patients are not to be declined transport based on their size or weight. Delays or resource issues may require escalation to involve Regional Medical Directors or the State's Chief Medical Officer, through the DMS.
8. Morbidly obese patients will usually be doctor-accompanied, to manage the underlying medical problems and to ensure a two-person clinical team to physically handle the patient. The priority must be based on the underlying diagnosis not availability of resources.

### **Flight Management**

1. If a standard aircraft is to be used, request additional persons to assist with loading and unloading at the pickup airport. If additional personnel are required to assist with unloading, provide early notification to the Coordination Centre staff so these can be arranged well in advance. In Perth, the CPTV should be requested to attend.

## Bariatric Transport System

1. Operation of the Bariatric Transport System is outlined elsewhere in detailed training materials. If the BTS is to be used, the aircraft will need to be configured by the pilot, which may take an hour. Assistance should be offered to the pilot to help expedite the process. Removal of items of medical equipment by clinical staff, such as the scoop stretcher, in accordance with a published list, is also required to reduce weight.
2. The BTS comprises five key elements: the bariatric stretcher, the aircraft bariatric stretcher restraint brackets, the bariatric loading platform and restraint bracket, the mobile bariatric lifting pedestal and the Hovermatt blower with disposable mat.
3. The pilot, retrieval doctor and flight nurse will travel in to the referring location, with the BTS system, to bring the patient out on the bariatric stretcher. The RFDS pilot is trained and responsible for the safe loading and restraint of the bariatric stretcher in both the aircraft and ambulance.
4. The ambulance should be sent out empty, without a standard stretcher, so that the BTS stretcher can be installed. Laminated instructions on use of the system and a copy of the Australian Standard Testing Certificate are included with the equipment, to allay any concerns by ambulance officers regarding use in road vehicles. The system is only compatible with Ferno equipped Mercedes Sprinter ambulances.
5. In the referring health service, clinical staff will oversee patient assessment, 'packaging' for transport and using the Hovermatt for transfer onto the bariatric stretcher. The disposable Hovermatt is left in place under the patient to assist with unloading and handling in Perth.
6. Use the knee-lift and the restraint net to assist with comfortably restraining large bodies.

## Induction of anaesthesia

1. Invest in good preparation. Be prepared for potential difficult airway. Position the patient in a 'ramped' position (external auditory meatus in line with angle of sternum). This may require a number of pillows under shoulders, head and neck.
2. Adequate pre-oxygenation (consider using PEEP valve on BVM).
3. Use rapid sequence induction, be prepared for risk of aspiration (suction on and enough people to turn patient if necessary). Give gastric acid prophylaxis if time permits.
4. Ventilate with PEEP and 45° head up. Tidal volume is based on ideal body weight. Titrate the ventilator pressures. Transport ventilators may struggle with large patients and hand ventilation may be required.
5. Monitor ABGs.
6. Beware of sensitivity to opiates and sedatives.
7. Anticipate a reduction in cardiac performance (prepare with fluids and or inotropes).
8. Critically ill morbidly obese patients need adequate nutrition - ensure early dextrose +/- insulin.

## References

- Adams, JP. Murphy, PG. Obesity in anaesthesia and intensive care. *BJA*, 2000, Vol.85 No.1 91-108.
- Crandall,CS. Gardner, S. Braude, DA. Estimation of Total Body Weight in Obese Patients. *Air Medical Journal*. May-June 2009, 28:3 139-145.
- RFDS Western Operations. Bariatric Training Manual & eLearning package (2014)
- Lin, BW et al. A better way to estimate patient's weights. *Am J Emerg Med* (2009) 27, 1060–1064

## 8.11 Acute Pain Management

### Theory

The goal of acute pain management is to balance reduction of distress due to pain, with safe transport. Inadequate analgesia can lead to increased oxygen demand, myocardial strain and raised intracranial pressure amongst other issues.

The accurate assessment of the cause of pain, initial stabilisation including immobilisation, titration of analgesia, monitoring for side effects including excess sedation are necessary.

The medications involve using simple analgesics, through to opiates and appropriate use of local anaesthetic techniques.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Referring hospital to initiate management of primary pathology and analgesia. Appropriate advice should be given to primary locations.
2. Paracetamol (15mg/kg) doses, six hourly, maximum of 1g per dose, orally or intravenously. Modify dose for liver disease. Be aware Paracetamol syrup is available in 120mg/5mls and 240mg/5mls, the latter in the medical chest. It is also available in suppository form.
3. Non steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), given orally with food or a proton pump inhibitor:
  - Ibuprofen - 10mg/kg up to 400mg PO eight hourly. Contraindications include renal impairment, gastric ulcer disease, bleeding and pregnancy. It may worsen asthma/COPD in a few susceptible patients.
  - Ketorolac - 0.05mg/kg IV or IM, up to 10mg.
4. Opiates are used for severe pain. Monitor respiratory rate and sedation level. Modify doses for renal and liver failure. Titrate to effect. Topical opiates such as a buprenorphine or fentanyl patch have a limited role in acute pain management; and can be potent particularly in the opiate naive patient.

Morphine: 0.1mg/kg IV, IM or SC in divided doses

Oral preparations 0.25mg/kg PO, divided into 5 doses.

Fentanyl: 1mcg/kg IV in divided doses

1.5mcg/kg intranasal, as an initial dose followed by 0.75mcg/kg if required (max dose 50mcg + 50mcg). If further doses are needed consider alternate route. Contraindications include decreased level of consciousness, epistaxis.

Oxycodone: 0.25mg/kg PO, divided into 5 doses. Oxycontin SR may be used at the same time.

Intravenous morphine levels have a peak effect up to 20 minutes after injection, while fentanyl is faster in action. Immediate release oral opiates take about an hour for peak effect.

The oral route is preferred if this is an option, while IV preferable to IM, due to absorption issue and the need to avoid sharps in flight.

A disposable "GO Medical®" patient controlled analgesia set may come out with the patient. This can be continued provided the patient has ongoing monitoring. It contains a 0.5 ml injection port which fills up every 5 minutes. The reservoir will contain the opiate solution. Avoid using additional opiates via other routes. Ensure the lines are left connected and are intact.

Antiemetics are often required, options include:

Metoclopramide: 0.2mg/kg IV, IM, PO up to 20mg 8 hourly.

Ondansetron: 0.1mg/kg IV, Buccal up to 8mg, 8 hourly.

Droperidol: 0.01mg/kg IV up to 0.5mg, 8 hourly

Prochlorperazine: 12.5mg IV, IM, PO 8 hourly

Medications for motion sickness including hyoscine should be considered

6. Ketamine is used for analgesia as well as sedation in some situations. Problems include dissociation, nausea and salivation. It has a lower but not insignificant risk of sedation and respiratory depression.

Bolus doses of 0.3mg/kg (divided into 3 doses), to a total maximum of 45mg, given 10 minutes apart. Infusions of 0.1-0.2mg/kg/hour may be considered. The same monitoring as intravenous opiates is required.

7. Local anaesthesia may provide pain relief of four to eight hours depending on the block. The referring hospitals may institute pre-flight. Relative contraindications include neurovascular compromise and risks of compartment syndrome.

Lower limb blockade is the most useful in transport. Femoral, fascia iliaca or sciatic nerve blocks can be performed either using landmark based techniques or ultrasound guided techniques. Ropivacaine (0.3mg/kg), or Bupivacaine (0.25mg/kg) should be used. Total local anaesthetic doses should be noted.

Maximal doses:

Bupivacaine: 1-2.5mg/kg (14-35mL of 0.5% solution in a 70kg adult)

Ropivacaine: 2.5-3mg/kg (87-105mL of 0.2% solution in a 70kg adult)

Lignocaine: 4-5mg/kg (28-35mL of 1% solution in a 70kg adult)

Upper limb blockade is unlikely to be beneficial in transport, and requires considerable time and expertise.

Spinal and epidural techniques have limited use in transport though staff should be aware of side effects and complications.

Patients may present with epidurals in situ, particularly post caesarean. The disposable "GO Medical®" patient controlled epidural anaesthesia set is likely to come with the patient. This can be continued provided the patient has ongoing monitoring (haemodynamics and lower limb sensation and motor review).

It has a 4 ml injection port which fills up every 15 minutes. The reservoir contains the solution (may be local anaesthetic or narcotic). Avoid using additional opiates via other routes if there is opiate within the epidural. Ensure the lines are left connected and are intact. The use should be ceased if there are concerns regarding haemorrhage, high block, respiratory depression or hypotension. If a decision is made to cease its use, it should be left intact and handed over to the receiving hospital for removal at an appropriate time.

Intercostal blocks for the treatment of ribs fractures can be useful. Be mindful of potential for causing pneumothorax.

8. Antineuropathic medications – May be used for acute pain, with a starting dose of gabapentin of 150-300mg and pregabalin of 75mg. This is used as an adjunct rather than replacement. Side effects include sedation and respiratory depression.

May be useful with:

Rib fractures, crush injuries, de-nervation, and burns



Obstructive sleep apnoea, chronic opiate and pain management problems such as those on long term opiates, respiratory disease and neuromuscular disease.

9. In patients with chronic opiate use (including methadone, oral buprenorphine programs) advice should be sought from their pain specialist or usual carer if possible.

Maximise non-pharmacological and non-opiate therapies. Continue regular medications. There is likely to be a higher need for opiates with these patients.

### **Special Notes**

Compartment syndrome - Pain disproportionate to injury or escalating analgesia requirements should alert to the possibility of this surgical emergency.

Obstructive Sleep Apnoea (OSA) – Patients with OSA are more sensitive to opiates, with an added likelihood of obstruction of the upper airway. Maximise non-opiate analgesia and slowly titrate opiates. When titrating opiates, 1/3<sup>rd</sup> of the normal dose should be a starting point.

Age variations – Both extremes of ages are more susceptible to the adverse effects of analgesia. However they are often also limited in their ability to verbalise their distress. Monitor closely and use age appropriate paediatric pain charts.

Methoxyflurane (Penthane) is often used in the prehospital setting. It is a volatile agent delivered by inhalation. Concerns regarding delayed hepatic and renal toxicity have limited its ongoing use. Doses in adults of less than 6mls (1.5g) are thought to be safe. Other adverse effects include sedation and drowsiness.

### **Medical Chest Items**

Paracetamol (171,178,192), Panadiene Forte (173), Ibuprofen (189), Morphine (188 )

### **References**

Macintyre P, Scott D, Schug S et al. Acute Pain Management: Scientific Evidence. 3<sup>rd</sup> Ed. 2010 ANZCA.

<http://www.gomedical.com.au/products/pciea.php>

<http://www.gomedical.com.au/products/pciiv.php>

## 8.12 Diving Related Injury and Illness

### Theory

1. There are a number of coastal locations in Western Australia where diving is a popular past-time, in addition some locations have industry dependant on diving. In particular Ningaloo Reef, Broome and some isolated pearl farms in the Kimberley, Busselton / Dunsborough, Esperance, Geraldton.
2. Hyperbaric chambers exist in Broome, Fiona Stanley Hospital and Garden Island (Naval use only).
3. A diving history is important to know about even if the patient is being transported for an unrelated problem as this will determine the flight profile required. Any symptoms developing within 48 hours of a dive should be considered as related until proven otherwise.
4. The diver may suffer from illness related to dysbarism, abnormal gas pressures and the general aquatic environment.

### Barotrauma

Descent barotrauma ("squeeze") commonly involves ENT injury including tympanic membrane rupture, round or oval window rupture leading to perilymph fistula resulting in acute dizziness, disorientation, tinnitus and deafness.

Ascent barotrauma, affects the lungs as a result of breath holding or airtrapping. This may result in mediastinal emphysema (presenting as hoarseness, neck swelling, retrosternal pain), pneumothorax / tension pneumothorax.

### Decompression illness (DCI)

This is often called "The Bends" and is a result of dissolved nitrogen coalescing to form bubbles in the tissue or blood. These bubbles may cause problems either by obstructing small vessels causing ischaemia, placing direct mechanical pressure on tissues, or increasing pressure within tissues such that circulation is impaired. The bends can occur even if divers have been diving well within the limitation of their dive tables, predisposing factors include exercise, dehydration, hypothermia, age, alcohol, repetitive dives, multiple ascents, altitude exposure and obesity.

Clinical manifestations include skin rashes, joint pain, localized swelling through to neurological (spinal cord and central including altered mental state and ataxia), cardiac and pulmonary. Symptoms usually occur within 4 hours.

### Arterial gas embolism (AGE), cerebral arterial gas embolism.(CAGE)

In this scenario pulmonary barotraumas is thought to be the origin of gas bubbles in the circulation. With CAGE symptoms occur as the diver surfaces resulting in loss of consciousness, fitting, chest pain and cardiovascular collapse. The sooner the onset of symptoms the greater severity.

### Abnormal gas pressures

This includes nitrogen narcosis, hypoxia, hypercapnoea all of which resulting reduced mental performance and put the diver at risk of unsafe diving and drowning. Shallow water blackout is a hypoxic phenomenon that also occurs in snorklers (the diver hyperventilates to blow off CO<sub>2</sub> and increase their breath hold time but may become apnoeic as a result).

### The aquatic environment

Issues to consider are near-drowning and envenomation.



### ***Pre-flight and In-flight Management***

1. The priority and need for doctor will depend very much on the nature of the presentation.
2. All patients who have a history of diving in the last 24 hours should be transported with a sea-level cabin even if their presentation is unrelated.
3. A strict sea-level cabin should be requested. Any meets must also occur at sea-level locations.
4. The patient must be kept flat (or head down although there is a suggestion that this might increase the risk of coronary bubbles forming) at all times to avoid bubbles rising up the cerebral circulation.
5. High flow oxygen must be given, if necessary the demand regulator on the aircraft can provide 100% oxygen with a good seal and divers are familiar with breathing via a regulator.
6. IV rehydration with normal saline will assist with tissue perfusion. Maintain a urine output of 2mL/kg/hr. A urinary catheter is advisable for the more severely affected.
7. Rewarming of the patient.
8. Aspirin is thought to help prevent platelet clumping.
9. A CXR should be requested if possible.
10. The patient must avoid straining (e.g. vomiting, coughing etc). An antiemetic is advisable.
11. If cerebral herniation is suspected temporizing with Mannitol may be useful.
12. The definitive treatment is recompression which involves transfer to a recompression chamber.
13. A severe diving injury in the Kimberley may ultimately need transfer to Perth but it is worthwhile exploring the possibility of an initial recompression in the Broome chamber prior transfer.
14. The dive profile and or computer and history will be useful for planning recompression therapy.

### ***References***

Dunn R, Dilley S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.

Edmonds C, Lowry C, Pennefather J, et al. Diving and Subaquatic Medicine. 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Hodder Arnold. 2005

Wyatt J, Illingworth R, Graham C, et al. Oxford Handbook of Emergency Medicine. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. Oxford University Press. 2006

## 9 NEUROLOGICAL

### 9.1 Status Epilepticus

#### *Theory*

1. Status epilepticus is a clinical or electrical seizure lasting longer than 5-10 minutes, or a series of seizures without complete recovery over the same period of time. After 30 minutes, the brain begins to suffer from hypoxia and acidosis, with depletion of local energy stores, cerebral oedema, and structural damage. Eventually, pyrexia, hypotension, respiratory depression, and even death may occur.
2. There can be a variety of causes of status epilepticus. Common causes include anticonvulsant withdrawal, alcohol withdrawal, cerebro-vascular accident, metabolic derangement (hypoxia, hyponatremia [ $< 120$  mmol/L] hypoglycaemia, hyperosmolality [ $> 300$  mosm/L]), trauma, drug toxicity (amphetamines, cocaine, salicylates, methanol, ethanol), CNS infection, hyperthermia ( $> 41-42^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) or tumour.
3. Search carefully for seizure activity in the comatose patient. Manifestations may be subtle, eg, deviation of head or eyes, repetitive jerking of fingers, hands, or one side of the face.

#### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

Flights for patients with status epilepticus will usually be doctor-accompanied and priority 1 or 2, depending on the facilities of the referring location.

1. Protect the Airway:
  - Roll the patient onto one side if possible. Endo-tracheal intubation may be necessary. Do not insert objects through clenched teeth, as it will not protect the airway and may cause broken teeth.
2. Obtain IV access:
  - If possible, take bloods for FBC, glucose, electrolytes, magnesium, and calcium determinations; hepatic and renal function tests; as well as extra tubes of blood for possible toxicology screen or drug levels (including anticonvulsants if patient is known or suspected to be taking them).
3. If IV access cannot be obtained:
  - diazepam may be given rectally at a dose of 0.2 – 0.7mg/kg or
  - midazolam can be given intranasally at a dose of 0.2mg/kg (max dose 10 mg) or
  - midazolam can be given IM at a dose of 0.1 – 0.4mg/kg (max dose 10mg).
4. Rule out hypoglycaemia:
  - Give glucose, 50 mL of 50% solution IV over 5 minutes.
  - If malnutrition or alcohol withdrawal is suspected, give thiamine, 100mg IV slowly prior to, or at the same time as glucose.
5. Give diazepam or midazolam:
  - Give diazepam 5-10mg (paediatrics 0.3-0.5mg/kg) IV over 1-2 minutes. This treatment is effective in 80-90% of cases of status epilepticus, although apnoea, bradycardia, or hypotension may rarely result.
  - Alternatively, IV midazolam may provide control of refractory status epilepticus; the suggested loading dose is 5 – 10mg (paediatrics 0.2mg/kg), followed by 0.05-0.2 mg/kg/hr.

6. Administer a loading dose of phenytoin or levetiracetam - regardless of the effect of diazepam, a maintenance drug is required:
  - Give phenytoin in normal saline, 15-20 mg/kg by IV infusion at a rate of 50 mg/min (paediatrics 2mg/kg/min) or slower.
  - If giving levetiracetam, 40mg/kg (max 3g) in normal saline over 5min.
  - Infusion of phenytoin at more rapid rates (especially if given into centrally placed IV lines) can precipitate cardiac arrhythmias or hypotension.
  - Phenytoin orally or IV should be given to all patients except those who have a short-term metabolic condition known to cause seizures, such as alcohol withdrawal or hypoglycaemia, which does not require or respond to phenytoin.
  - Phenobarbitone is the drug of choice for neonates. Give 20mg/kg in normal saline over 15min.
7. If these measures fail, general anaesthesia with ventilatory assistance and neuromuscular junction blockade will most likely be required. Use a rapid sequence induction technique with cricoid pressure, thiopentone (3 - 5mg/kg) and suxamethonium (1.5mg/kg).
8. Measure arterial blood gases and pH:
  - Arterial blood PCO<sub>2</sub> is a sensitive indicator of the adequacy of ventilation (hypercapnia is present in proportion to the degree of hypoventilation). Metabolic acidosis due to lactic acidosis resulting from status epilepticus is commonly present for as long as 1 hour after a seizure, depending on the duration and vigour of muscular activity. This acidosis requires no treatment. Acidosis lasting longer than 1 hour should prompt a search for other causes of acidosis.

### **Special Notes**

1. Consider Meningitis:

Commence appropriate antibiotics if meningitis is suspected, especially if fever (body temperature > 38.5° C) or nuchal rigidity is present. However, the muscle activity of status epilepticus alone produces transient fever higher than 38.5° C in 25% of patients. Status epilepticus may also produce a mild transient cerebrospinal fluid pleocytosis (< 100 cells/micro/L).
2. Prevent injury to the patient during the seizure by padding the environment. Do not use rigid restraint (fractures may result) or insert objects into the patient's mouth during the seizure.

### **Medical Chest Items**

Diazepam ampoules 10mg/ 2 mL (Item 98), Diazepam tablets 2mg (Item 191).

## STATUS EPILEPTICUS FLOW CHART

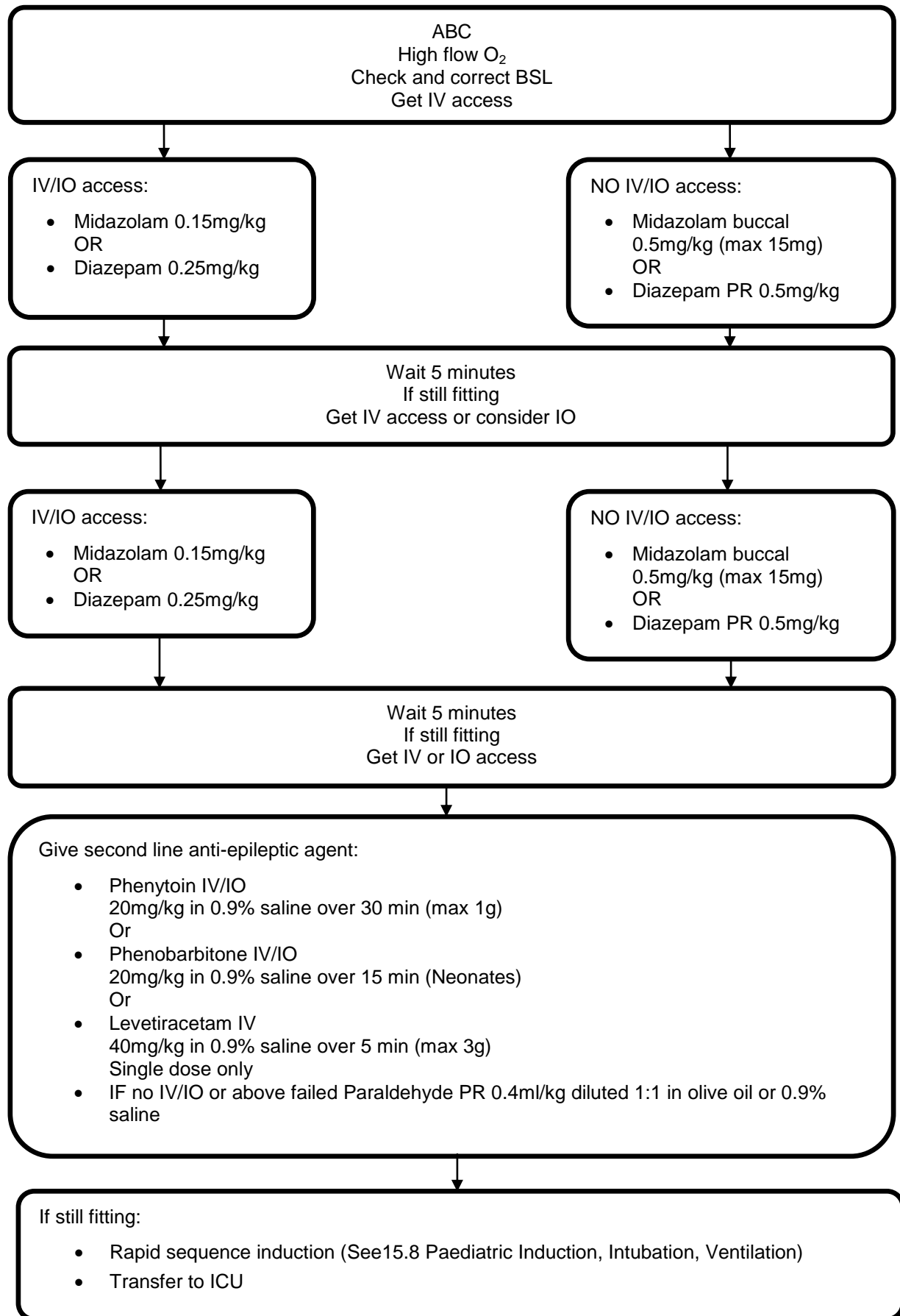


Figure 22. Status Epilepticus Flow Chart

## References

Saunders C, Ho M. Current Emergency Diagnosis and Treatment. 4<sup>th</sup> Ed. Appleton Lange. 1992.

Hay W, Levin M, Sondheimer J, et al. Current Diagnosis and Treatment: Paediatrics. 20<sup>th</sup> ed. Lange. 2011.

McPhee S, Papadakis M, Tierney L. Current Medical Diagnosis and Treatment. 47<sup>th</sup> ed. Lange. 2007.

Dunn R, Dilley S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.

Lahat E, Goldman M, Barr J, et al. Comparison of intranasal midazolam with intravenous diazepam for treating febrile seizures in children: prospective randomised study. *BMJ* 2000; 321: 83-86

Paediatric Acute Care Guidelines – Princess Margaret Hospital Emergency Department  
<http://kidshealthwa.com/guidelines/status-epilepticus/> (accessed 19<sup>th</sup> March 2015).

## 9.2 Subarachnoid Haemorrhage

### Theory

1. Defined as bleeding into the subarachnoid space. Seventy percent are due to rupture of an aneurysm in the Circle of Willis. Other causes are arterio-venous malformations, mycotic aneurysms, illicit drug use, bleeding diatheses and trauma. Risk factors include smoking, hypertension, alcohol, genetic factors, sympathomimetic drugs, oestrogen deficiency, anti-thrombotic therapy and statins.
2. Up to 80% of patients have a small “warning bleed” which precedes the major bleed. From the major bleeds, 50% of patients will die or be permanently incapacitated. A further 30% will die if not treated.
3. Important clinical symptoms and signs include: sudden onset of severe “worst ever” headache, vomiting, transient loss of consciousness, depressed conscious state and hypertension. Seizures occur in 20% but focal neurological signs are uncommon. Diagnosis is confirmed by CT scan (95% sensitive) and/or lumbar puncture.
4. Early neurosurgical or radiological intervention and the use of nimodipine (a calcium channel blocker which reduces vasospasm in cerebral arteries) give excellent outcomes for patients with warning bleeds and less severe SAH.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. The priority assigned will be determined by the severity of the patient’s illness and accuracy of diagnosis, confirmed wherever possible with CT scan. Most flights will be Priority 2. Some critically ill patients in smaller centres may be Priority 1.
2. Flights should be doctor-accompanied if there is a significantly depressed conscious state, seizures or severe hypertension. Many patients with these criteria will benefit from early intubation and IPPV.
3. All patients should receive oxygen and be fully monitored. An IDC may be appropriate for very drowsy patients. Where possible, patients should be nursed with 30o head elevation to reduce cerebral oedema. Actions that induce sudden rises in intracranial pressure (e.g. coughing on ETT, vomiting or seizures) should be avoided as much as possible. Prophylactic anti-emetics and anticonvulsants may be appropriate for individual patients.
4. Moderate rises in blood pressure are necessary to maintain cerebral perfusion pressure, and do not require treatment. Severe hypertension should be treated initially with sedation and analgesia. If blood pressure remains grossly elevated, control with IV atenolol 1 mg/min or metoprolol (until target blood pressure reached). Do not correct rapidly. In patients with severe hypertension, invasive arterial pressure monitoring is helpful.
5. Nimodipine is used to prevent secondary cerebral vasospasm but is not stocked by RFDS and is generally only available in tertiary settings.

### References

Dunn R, Dilley S, Brookes J, et al. *The Emergency Medicine Manual*. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.

Bersten A, Soni N. *Oh’s Intensive Care Manual*. 6th ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009.

Neurology drug guidelines [revised 2011 Jun]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.

Cardiovascular drug guidelines [revised 2011 Jun]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul.

## 9.3 Delirium Tremens

### Theory

1. Delirium tremens occurs as a result of withdrawal from alcohol. It is an acute organic psychosis that is usually manifest within 24-96 hours after the last drink, but may occur up to 7-10 days later. Delirium tremens is characterised by mental confusion, tremor, sensory hyperacuity, visual hallucinations (often terrifying), autonomic hyperactivity, diaphoresis, dehydration, electrolyte disturbances (especially hypokalaemia and hypomagnesaemia), seizures and cardiovascular abnormalities. Fever may be present.
2. Central nervous system depressant drugs are important in the treatment of delirium tremens. This applies whether the syndrome is the primary reason for transport of the patient, or whether it is a downstream effect of restricted access to habitual alcohol due to some other illness or injury.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Priority will vary depending on the patient's primary problem and the degree to which risks to the patient's health are compounded by this severe alcohol withdrawal syndrome. A doctor-accompanied flight may be necessary if the patient is severely ill or if symptoms are difficult to control.
2. Pre-flight and in-flight management aims to provide supportive care: thiamine and multivitamin therapy (Ensure glucose not given until thiamine has been administered); fluid, electrolyte and glucose support, and benzodiazepine-based control of symptoms. Give diazepam 10mg to 20mg every 1 to 2 hours until control of symptoms is satisfactory and moderate sedation occurs. Doses may need to be high and extra supplies of benzodiazepines may need to be carried.
3. IV diazepam 5 – 10mg or midazolam 2.5-5mg IV may be needed to gain control of symptoms.
4. Other drugs with some potential application in delirium tremens include  $\beta$ -blockers (e.g. atenolol 100mg per day when the heart rate is above 100bpm and 50mg per day for heart rates between 50 and 100 bpm). Antiepileptic medication is not required unless there is an underlying seizure disorder. If an antipsychotic medication is required haloperidol or droperidol may be useful. Clonidine (e.g. 5 $\mu$ g/kg every two hours) has also been used for anxiolysis and to suppress cardiovascular symptoms.

### Medical Chest Items

Diazepam 10mg/ 2 mL (Item 98), Diazepam tablets 2mg (Item 191).

### References

McPhee S, Papadakis M, Tierney L. *Current Medical Diagnosis and Treatment*. 47<sup>th</sup> ed. Lange. 2007

Psychotropic drug guidelines [revised 2008 Oct]. In: eTG complete [CD-ROM]. Melbourne: Therapeutic Guidelines Limited; 2012 Jul

## 9.4 Alcohol Withdrawal

### Theory

1. Patients undergoing transport may be withdrawing from alcohol. With time, the problems will increase and may pose a risk to clinical management in flight. Onset of withdrawal is usually 6-24 hours after the last drink and resolves in 2-3 days.
2. Seizures occur in about 5% of people withdrawing from alcohol. The presence of acute medical conditions (e.g. trauma or sepsis) increases the risk of seizure. Seizures usually manifest as a single episode of generalised seizure activity, typically 7-24 hours after the last drink.
3. The *Alcohol Withdrawal Scale (AWS)* is a useful instrument for determining the severity of alcohol withdrawal syndrome and guiding management.

### Preflight Management

1. Consider the potential for any patient to be withdrawing from alcohol. If likely attempt to obtain an AWS score from the referring location.
2. Refer to the *Delirium Tremens Clinical Guideline* for management of acute severe withdrawal.

|                     |          |
|---------------------|----------|
| Mild withdrawal     | AWS < 4  |
| Moderate withdrawal | AWS 5-14 |
| Severe withdrawal   | AWS >14  |

### Special Notes

1. One standard drink is 10g of alcohol. This equates to 285mL middy of full strength beer, 100mL glass of wine, 60mL glass of fortified wine or 30mL nip of spirits.
2. High risk consumption is 80g per day for men or 60g per day for women.

Most people will underestimate their alcohol intake.



**Alcohol Withdrawal Scale**

Table 11. Alcohol Withdrawal Scale

| Symptom / Sign  | Score |
|---|-------|
| <b>Perspiration</b>   |       |
| No abnormal sweating  | 0     |
| Moist skin  | 1     |
| Localised beads of sweat  | 2     |
| Whole body wet from perspiration  | 3     |
| Maximal sweating – clothes and linen wet  | 4     |
| <b>Tremor</b>   |       |
| No tremor   | 0     |
| Slight intention tremor   | 1     |
| Constant tremor of arms   | 2     |
| Constant marked tremor of extremities   | 3     |
| <b>Anxiety</b>  |       |
| No apprehension   | 0     |
| Slight apprehension   | 1     |
| Understandable fear – eg of withdrawal  | 2     |
| Anxiety occasionally rising to panic  | 3     |
| Constant panic-like anxiety   | 4     |
| <b>Agitation</b>  |       |
| Rests normally  | 0     |
| Cannot sit or lie still / insomnia  | 1     |
| Moves constantly, wants to get out of bed   | 2     |
| Constantly restless, gets out of bed  | 3     |
| Maximally restless  | 4     |
| <b>Hallucinations</b>   |       |
| No evidence of hallucinations   | 0     |
| Distortion of real objects with awareness that these are not real   | 1     |
| Appearance of totally new objects or perceptions with awareness that these are not real                           | 2     |
| Believes the hallucinations are real but still oriented to place / person   | 3     |
| Believes him/herself to be in a totally non-existent environment; preoccupied and cannot be diverted or reassured | 4     |
| <b>Axilla temp</b>  |       |
| <37.1°C   | 0     |
| 37.1-37.5°C   | 1     |
| 37.6-38.0°C   | 2     |
| 38.1-38.5°C   | 3     |
| >38.5°C   | 4     |
| <b>Orientation</b>  |       |
| Oriented to time/place/person   | 0     |
| Oriented to person, unsure of place / time  | 1     |
| Oriented to person, disorientated to place / time   | 2     |
| Disoriented with short periods of lucidity  | 3     |
| Completely disoriented  | 4     |

## 10 OBSTETRIC

### 10.1 Pre-term Labour and Tocolysis

#### *Theory*

1. Pre-term labour is defined as onset of labour before the 37<sup>th</sup> week of gestation. For RFDS purposes the emphasis is generally on women who are less than 36 weeks gestation where adequate paediatric management is not possible outside a tertiary (King Edward Memorial or Darwin Hospital) or in some cases regional setting. (Some regional paediatricians are able to manage neonates from 34 weeks gestation).
2. With careful assessment, prompt transfer and aggressive tocolytic therapy in flight, the majority of patients in pre-term labour can be transferred to an appropriate centre where optimal conditions exist for delivery and resuscitation of the neonate.
3. The neonatal transport service (NETS) in Western Australia is not intended to be a resuscitation service and should not be tasked for alleged imminent delivery without the consultation of a senior RFDS doctor with obstetric experience.
4. There is nothing to be gained by “going in” to hospitals to retrieve women in advanced labour, a rapid airport handover should be arranged.
5. Perinatal morbidity and mortality for low and extremely low birth weight infants is significantly improved by delivery and resuscitation in a tertiary setting.
6. Tocolysis is used to suppress labour to allow administration of corticosteroids for foetal lung maturation and ensure safe transfer in-utero to an appropriate facility.
7. Corticosteroids enhance foetal lung maturation and decrease the risk of neonatal intracerebral haemorrhage and necrotizing enterocolitis.

#### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

1. Diagnosis of labour is based on painful regular contractions accompanied by cervical change (effacement and dilatation). Information to be sought in the pre-flight assessment includes parity, frequency and strength of contractions, cervical dilatation and effacement, status of membranes (intact or ruptured), foetal heart rate (CTG if available), presentation, past obstetric history.
2. Examination of the cervix is essential, a digital examination unless contraindicated (PV bleed, SROM without labour). If contraindicated a sterile speculum examination is requested.
3. Encourage the use of foetal fibronectin swab testing. This test must be done prior to any vaginal examination and in the absence of ruptured membranes. A negative result less than 37 weeks in otherwise low risk women has a 96% predictive value for no delivery in the next week. This may mean a transfer is unnecessary and the woman can be monitored locally (depending on skill and experience of local staff).
4. Cervical length as determined by transvaginal ultrasound, if available, may be useful, a cervical length >30mm and undilated internal os are negative predictors of birth.
5. If < 34 weeks completed pregnancy give betamethasone (Celestone Chronodose) 11.4mg (equals 2 ampoules) IM. This may be contraindicated if chorioamnionitis.
6. Commence tocolysis immediately unless contraindicated. (Large APH or abruption may be a contraindication as is foetal death).
7. Instructions regarding choice of tocolytic should be clear:
  - a) < 4cm with intact membranes a trial of oral nifedipine may be considered.

- The dose is 20mg PO at 30 minute intervals until contractions cease OR 60mg has been given.
  - Side effects of nifedipine include facial flushing, headache, nausea, tachycardia, dizziness, hypotension (very uncommon in normotensive patients), cardiac failure, raised liver enzymes.
- b) If the woman is still labouring after 90 minutes salbutamol must be commenced.
- c) 4cm commence salbutamol as per RFDS infusion guidelines:
- Side effects of salbutamol include tachycardia, hypotension, tremor, pulmonary oedema, hyperglycaemia, hypokalemia.
- d) If woman is term and the transfer time short it may be appropriate to avoid tocolysis and allow labour to progress.
- e) Rarely alternative tocolytics may be considered:
- glyceryl trinitrate – 5-10mg patch (max 20mg), may cause hypotension and headache.
  - indomethacin 100mg PO then 25mg PO 4 hourly. Risk of closure of foetal ductus arteriosus and renal impairment, gastric ulceration.
8. Magnesium for foetal neuro-protection is not routinely used in transport, the expectation is that it will be given on arrival at the tertiary centre as it is not given until 4 hours pre-delivery and then only for women less than 30 week gestation. Should a patient already have magnesium running a doctor accompanied flight will be required with cardiac, respiratory and patella reflex monitoring.
- If used, a loading dose of 4g is given over 20min followed by 1g per hour infusion for 4 hours, cease if delivery occurs earlier.
  - If delivery is considered imminent discuss use with a consultant at KEMH.
9. The patient should be nursed in the left lateral position and given supplemental oxygen to compensate for altitude hypoxia.
10. A doctor will be required for women in more advanced labour where delivery is a risk. Priority will depend on stage of labour (i.e. threatened vs. established).
11. In the presence of prolonged rupture of membranes, Group B Streptococcus or urinary tract infection antibiotics should be given, benzylpenicillin 1.2g IV, if allergic to penicillin clindamycin 600mg IV.
12. If delivery is not imminent at the end of transfer then it may be acceptable to cease the salbutamol for ambulance transfer. If the woman is actively progressing and requiring ongoing salbutamol infusion she should have a nurse or doctor escort to the receiving hospital.

### Special Notes

1. Nifedipine is the mainstay of tocolysis in the tertiary setting and consequently erroneous advice may be given regarding its use by hospital staff inexperienced in the retrieval setting. Whilst there is evidence supporting both the efficacy of nifedipine and its reduced side effect profile, this pertains to a very different population and circumstances with different clinical goals to those that apply to RFDS air transport over long distances in Western Australia.
2. All of the trials supporting nifedipine had a cut off of 4 cm dilatation, none of them involved long distance transport of women in advanced labour.

3. There are few if any other geographical locations in the world where women are transported in labour distances of thousands of kilometres. Many years of cumulative experience with using IV salbutamol in this setting has proven to be safe and resulted in almost no risk of in-flight delivery. The advantage of using IV salbutamol by infusion is that it can be ceased, or titrated to effect.

### **References**

King JF, Flenady V, Papatsonis D, et al. Calcium channel blockers for inhibiting preterm labour. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2003, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD002255. DOI:10.1002/14651858. CD002255.

Apl N, Newnham J, Nathan L, et al. Aeromedical transfer of women at risk of preterm delivery in remote and rural Western Australia. Why are there no births in flight? *Australian and New Zealand J Obstetrics and Gynaecology*. 2012 In press.

King Edward Memorial Hospital, Clinical Guidelines, 2.5 Preterm Labour, Section B. February 2011.

## 10.2 Pre-Eclampsia

### Theory

1. Hypertension in pregnancy is defined as SBP $\geq$ 140mmHg, DBP $\geq$ 90mmHg, or a rise from booking blood pressure of  $>30/15$ mmHg.
2. Pre-eclampsia is a multi-system disorder characterized by hypertension developing after 20 weeks gestation and involvement of one or more other organ systems.
  - Proteinuria (random ACR  $>30$ mg/mmol)
  - Renal – rising creatinine, oliguria, uric acid  $>0.36$ mmol/l
  - Haematological – thrombocytopaenia, haemolysis, DIC
  - Liver – raised transaminases, RUQ pain, epigastric pain.
  - Neurological – headache, visual disturbances (flashes, floaters, cortical blindness, retinal vasospasm)
  - Hyperreflexia with clonus.
  - Convulsions (eclampsia)
  - CVA
  - Pulmonary oedema
  - IUGR
  - Abruption
3. Treatment in transport is aimed at controlling blood pressure and preventing convulsions. The definitive treatment is delivery of the foetus.
4. HELLP syndrome is a variant of severe pre-eclampsia (Haemolysis, Elevated Liver enzymes, Low Platelet count), this carries a maternal mortality as high as 2 %.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Patients with severe pre-eclampsia will require a priority 1 or 2 doctor accompanied flight. Asymptomatic hypertension may be a priority 2 or 3 nurse only flight.
2. Where possible laboratory evidence of disease severity should be sought (LFTs, Uric acid, platelet count, coagulation profile, and urinary ACR).
3. Direct questioning about symptoms should be documented (headache, epigastric or RUQ pain, visual disturbance, hyperreflexia).
4. Ensure IV access and oxygen therapy.
5. Consider antihypertensive therapy:
  - a) Mild (140 -160/90-100) – Oral alpha methyl dopa 250-750mg tds or oral labetalol 100-400mg tds (contraindicated in asthma)
  - b) Severe (SBP  $\geq$ 170 mm Hg or DBP  $\geq$ 110 mm Hg)
    - 1<sup>st</sup> line nifedipine 10mg p.o. repeated after 30 min if no effect.
    - 2<sup>nd</sup> line labetalol 20-50mg IV over 2min (risk bradycardia, contraindicated in asthma). May repeat after 15-30min.
    - 3<sup>rd</sup> line hydralazine 5-10mg IV over 2 min. May repeat after 30min. Blood pressure should not fall below 140/80.
6. Consider anticonvulsant therapy for anyone at risk of eclampsia, i.e. prodromal symptoms consistent with severe pre-eclampsia.

- $\text{Mg}_2 \text{SO}_4$  seizure prophylaxis – Loading dose of 4g over 20 min followed by maintenance of 1g per hour. (See infusion guidelines 12. Magnesium sulphate infusion – Pre-eclampsia). Monitor for loss of deep tendon reflexes and bradypnoea (< 12) with 15 minutely observations. Continuous cardiac monitoring and availability of calcium gluconate is required (2.2mmol in 10mL for magnesium toxicity). A magnesium infusion mandates a doctor accompanied flight.
7. Administer betamethasone 11.4mg IM to women 24-34 weeks in whom delivery is planned.
  8. Restrict IV fluids to 80mL / hr. Pulmonary oedema is a common complication. Monitor hourly urine output via urinary catheter.

## References

King Edward Memorial Hospital, Clinical Guidelines Section B; 2.2.1 – 2.2.3 Hypertension in Pregnancy – Medical Management. August 2011

Lowes S, Brown M, Dekker G, et al. Guidelines for the management of hypertensive disorders of pregnancy 2008. Society of Obstetric Medicine of Australia and New Zealand. 2008

## 10.3 Eclampsia

### Theory

1. Eclampsia is a generalized tonic-clonic convulsion as a consequence of pregnancy induced hypertension or pre-eclampsia. It may occur pre, intra or post labour.
2. Eclampsia is associated with increased risk of maternal and foetal mortality and morbidity.
3. Prodromal symptoms and signs include a sharp rise in blood pressure, severe headache, drowsiness or confusion, visual disturbances, reduced urine output +/- increased proteinuria, twitchiness, upper abdominal pain, nausea or vomiting.
4. Complications include abruption, disseminated intravascular coagulation, brain haemorrhage, multiorgan failure involving cardiac renal and hepatic systems.
5. Eclamptic seizures are rarely prolonged and respond well to magnesium sulphate, there is little need for other anticonvulsants and need for intubation and ventilation is also rare.
6. Be sure to consider other causes of seizures in your differential diagnosis.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Flights for patients with eclampsia will usually be priority 1, doctor accompanied.
2. First line seizure management:
  - Nurse left lateral position.
  - Keep airway clear, suction if necessary.
  - Apply high flow oxygen.
  - Establish IV access.
3. Anticonvulsant therapy:
  - Magnesium sulphate 4g IV over 20 min followed by maintenance infusion of 1g per hour. (See infusion guidelines).
  - If a further seizure occurs an additional 2g can be given over 5 min.
  - If no IV access available, e.g. In a primary setting,  $Mg_2SO_4$  can be given IM, 4g each buttock.
  - As a second line IV diazepam in 2mg boluses (max 10mg) may be considered.
4. Monitor for evidence of magnesium toxicity (respiratory depression, loss of deep tendon reflexes, cardiac dysrhythmias) and have calcium gluconate available to treat.
5. Manage hypertension by parenteral means as described in guideline for severe pre-eclampsia, e.g. labetalol or hydralazine.
6. Monitor hourly urine output.
7. Expedite delivery in suitable facility.
8. Monitor for complications and where possible determine platelet count, uric acid, clotting function, renal and liver function tests.
9. In the unlikely event that a patient is intubated be aware that KEMH does not have the capacity to manage a ventilated patient, communication with receiving units is paramount. It may be that the patient should be transported to an adult intensive care facility (preferably SCGH) with a view to sending an obstetric and paediatric team there to deliver her. Ensure that this is all determined before your arrival in Perth.

### References

King Edward Memorial Hospital; Clinical Guidelines, Section B, 2.2 Hypertension in Pregnancy, May 2009

## 10.4 Antepartum Haemorrhage

### Theory

1. The major causes of bleeding in the last half of pregnancy are placenta praevia, abruption, uterine scar disruption and ruptured vasa previa. Bleeding originating in the lower genital tract is also common but rarely significant.
2. Placenta praevia – implantation of the placenta over the lower segment of the uterus. Major implies the placenta covers partially or completely the internal os. Digital vaginal examination is contra-indicated, speculum examination is permissible. Delivery should be by caesarean section. Blood loss is generally painless.
3. Placental abruption – placental separation from the uterine wall. May be significant concealed blood loss. Pain is the key in diagnosis, especially pain persisting between contractions. The diagnosis is largely clinical and *may be missed on ultrasound*. Tocolysis may be a relative contraindication as a contracted uterus may tamponade some blood loss. The more severe grades may be associated with coagulopathy. Abruption may occur in the setting of pre-eclampsia.
4. Uterine scar disruption tends to occur in the setting of labour with sudden pain, bleeding cessation of contractions and loss of foetal heart sounds. Urgent caesarean delivery is required. Transfer may be required post operatively.
5. Vasa praevia is very rare and bleeding occurs with membrane rupture, blood loss is foetal with a 50% foetal mortality.
6. Blood loss <50mL is considered minor, 50-1000mL without shock is considered major, >1000mL and/or shock is considered massive.

### Pre-flight and in-flight management

1. The priority is determined on a case by case basis but will usually be priority 1 or 2 with a midwife and doctor team for major or massive APH.
2. Provide oxygen.
3. Look for evidence of shock, remember blood loss may be concealed.
4. Ensure two wide bore intravenous cannulae are inserted and at least 4 units of blood cross matched to accompany the patient. If possible arrange for coagulation profile.
5. Assess cervix by speculum unless placenta known to be clear of the os, then digital examination appropriate.
6. Insert a urinary catheter as a measure of tissue perfusion.
7. Look for evidence of pre-eclampsia if abruption a possible diagnosis and manage accordingly. (See [Pre-Eclampsia](#)).
8. Ensure corticosteroids administered according to gestation and risk of delivery in next 24 hours.
9. Consider tocolysis if contracting, there is no contraindication with placenta praevia but relative contraindication with major abruption.
10. Enquire as to CTG result or foetal heart rate. If there is evidence of severe foetal distress delivery may need to be expedited at a regional centre then neonatal transfer arranged.
11. Enquire as to results of ultrasound examinations localising placenta and looking for evidence of abruption (remember abruption can be missed on ultrasound).

### Reference

Damos J, Eisinger S. Advanced Life Support in Obstetrics Course Manual. 2006. American Academy of Family Physicians.



## 10.5 Post-Partum Haemorrhage

### Theory

1. Occurs in 3-5% of all pregnancies, causes 5% of maternal deaths.
2. Primary vs Secondary.
  - a) Primary —  $\geq 500\text{mL}$  loss within 24 hours of delivery. Causes (the 4 “T”s):
    - Tone – uterine atony (grand multi, multiple pregnancy, polyhydramnios, prolonged, precipitate or dysfunctional labour, use of tocolytics, uterine infection).
    - Tissue – retained placenta or products of conception.
    - Trauma – tears uterine, vaginal or cervical.
    - Thrombin – coagulopathy (e.g. foetal death, abruption, HELLP syndrome, pre-eclampsia, amniotic fluid embolism).
  - b) Secondary — 1-6 weeks post partum, often related to infection +/- retained products. Less likely to be catastrophic.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. All flights for primary PPH will be either priority 1 or 2 and doctor accompanied.
2. Ensure as precise a diagnosis and elucidation of cause as possible so as to guide management strategy, including a thorough examination of genital tract, inspection of placenta.
3. First line therapy / resuscitation:
  - Lie patient flat, may need to raise legs.
  - High flow oxygen.
  - Two large bore IV cannulae. Fluid resuscitation is as per guidelines for shock.
  - Have blood available, preferably cross-match supplied by referring hospital, if not carry O negative to patient. Consider early use of FFP and platelets (where available). (See [Major Haemorrhage](#)).
  - Monitor BP, HR, ECG, Urine output, Blood loss, Temp, O<sub>2</sub> saturation.
4. Specific management :
  - a) Tone
    - Uterine massage
    - Empty bladder
    - Oxytocics – 1<sup>st</sup> line ergometrine 0.25mg IV (with antiemetic) or syntocinon 10 units IV if hypertensive. Followed by oxytocin infusion ( 40units in 1 litre CSL or N/saline over 4 hours).
    - 2<sup>nd</sup> line prostaglandin F2 alpha (1mg/mL) 1mL intramyometrially or IM up to 5 mL.
    - OR
    - misoprostol tabs 1mg ( 5 x 200µg) PR.
    - Bimanual compression.
    - Compression may also be provided by insertion and inflation of a Bakri balloon (with normal saline) +/- a B-Lynch suture.

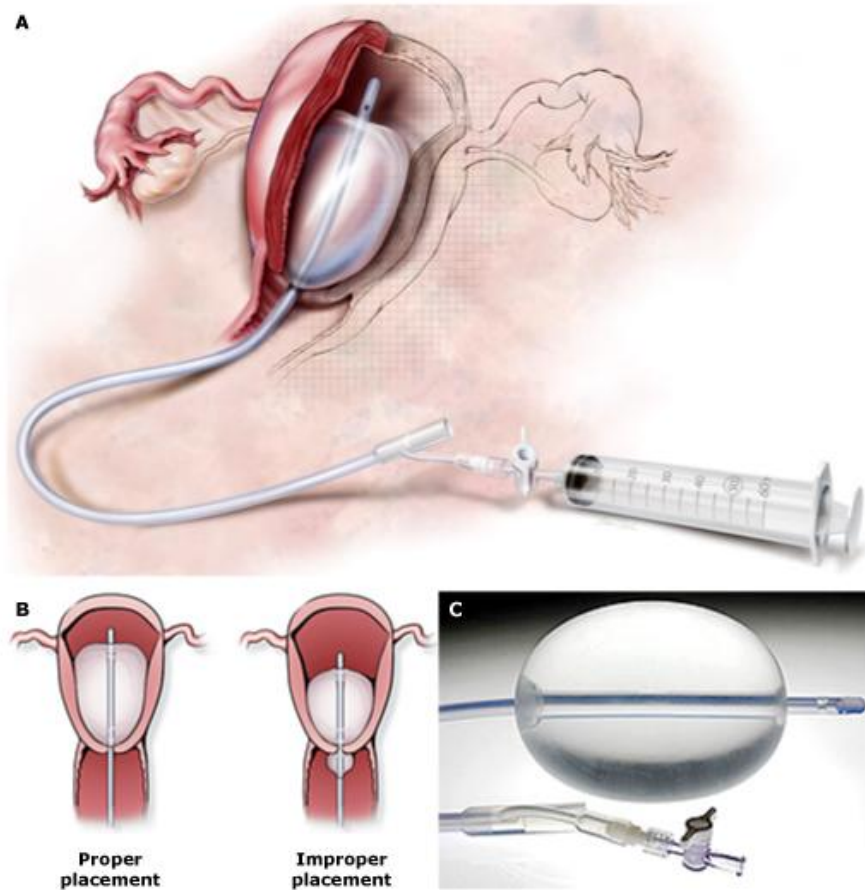


Figure 23. Bakri Balloon Placement

- Tissue – Ensure placenta is delivered and complete or arrange same urgently.
- Trauma – Repair or arrange urgent repair of tears. Early transfer to operating theatre may be required for ligation of major vessels or hysterectomy.
- Thrombin – Where available check coagulation studies, replace as necessary.
- Other (if stable) – Cervical and vaginal swabs for MC&S, antibiotics (amoxicillin / ampicillin 1g 8 hourly IV and metronidazole 500mg IV 8 hourly plus or minus gentamicin. Ultrasound. Analgesia may be required.

## References

The Royal Women's Hospital, Victoria, Australia. Clinical Practice Guidelines. 2006

American Academy of Family Physicians. Advanced Life Support in Obstetrics. Course Syllabus. 4<sup>th</sup> ed.

## 10.6 Epidurals In-Flight

### *Theory*

1. A small number of patients each year are transported with epidural catheters in situ. It is not recommended that they be used in-flight for the following reasons:
  - Risk of movement of the catheter with patient transfer, results in the chance of intrathecal or intravascular injection.
  - Sub-optimal resuscitation conditions exist in-flight to manage a total spinal or local anaesthetic toxicity event.

### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

1. An epidural may be “topped up” pre-flight by staff at the referring hospital if there is adequate time for post-top up observations.
2. If the flight is doctor accompanied and the doctor experienced in use of epidurals and confident of placement, they may give small incremental top ups.
3. IV narcotics and NSAIDS may be prescribed for flight nurse administration in the interim.

## 10.7 Obstetric Trauma

### Theory

1. All major trauma in pregnancy should be managed with the same priorities as in the non pregnant, i.e. Airway and Cervical Spine, Breathing and Circulation. Some modifications in positioning will need to be made in the presence of a gravid uterus > 20 weeks gestation. What is best for mother is best for baby.
2. Only after initial assessment and stabilisation of mother should attention be turned to the foetus.
3. The greatest risks to the foetus are from maternal hypoxia and hypovolaemia.
4. Obstetric complications that may occur in the setting of trauma include foetal injury, foeto-maternal transfusion, pre-term labour, rupture of membranes, abruption and uterine rupture.
5. Anatomical and physiological changes to the airway, respiratory and circulatory systems occur in pregnancy which must be borne in mind when managing the pregnant patient.
  - Airway – laryngeal oedema, soft tissue enlargement in neck and large breasts interfering with intubation.
  - Breathing – reduced functional residual capacity due to upward pressure on diaphragm from uterus. Increased oxygen demand. More rapid onset of hypoxia after induction.
  - Circulation – Increased blood volume, heart rate and relative anaemia. Effects of aorto-caval compression in the supine position.
  - Gastrointestinal – gastro-oesophageal reflux and increase risk of aspiration.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Priority and need for doctor will be assessed on a case by case basis however as per our usual major trauma guidelines most of these flights will either be a priority 1 or priority 2 with a medical team (doctor and midwife).
2. Ensure airway is secure, cervical spine is splinted where necessary. Provide supplemental oxygen.
3. Ensure two wide bore cannulae are inserted and cross matched blood arranged to accompany patient where necessary.
4. Manage the mother's injuries according to usual EMST / ATLS principles.
5. Either a left lateral position or wedge under right hip to ensure left lateral tilt is required when 20 weeks gestation or greater.
6. After above priorities attended to the following obstetric considerations should be documented:
  - Fundal height
  - Uterine activity
  - CTG / FHR / FM
  - Vaginal loss blood or liquor
  - Cervical change (either speculum or digital exam)
  - Blood group, Keilhauer, coags. Anti-D if Rh negative
  - Ultrasound

- Steroids in delivery possible in next 24 hours
  - Tocolysis if indicated
7. All major trauma should be referred directly to the trauma centre (RPH). Any obstetric support will be provided by a team sent from KEMH / NETS. If there is evidence of foetal distress or imminent delivery good communication is the key, notifying trauma teams of the need for urgent obstetric intervention will ensure the most appropriate response is ready on your arrival at RPH.
  8. Minor blunt abdominal trauma (no significant maternal injury) is unlikely to be referred for transport if CTG monitoring available, otherwise referral to a regional centre for a period of CTG monitoring, Kleihauer and ultrasound may be required.

### **Reference**

Damos J, Eisinger S. Advanced Life Support in Obstetrics Course Manual. 2006. American Academy of Family Physicians.

Karczub A. State Trauma Guidelines For The Management of Injured Pregnant Women. Department of Health Western Australia 2012.

## 11 PAEDIATRICS

### 11.1 Paediatric Upper Airway Obstruction

#### *Theory*

1. Usually children with upper airway obstruction are less than 5 years old, as their airways are narrower and more prone to swelling.
2. Most common causes are croup (viral laryngotracheobronchitis), laryngeal foreign body and epiglottitis. Epiglottitis is now rare in children since the Haemophilus influenza B immunization became available, but can still occur in unimmunized children or be due to other bacteria such as Streptococcus and staphylococcus.
3. Children with upper airway obstruction are in a life-threatening situation where rapid deterioration and sudden complete obstruction are possible.
4. Most children will be transported unintubated to either a regional hospital or directly to the nearest tertiary ICU.

#### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

1. Aetiology and severity can often be determined at the initial pre-flight assessment. Children with severe croup will often respond well to adrenaline by nebulizer. (dose 0.5mL/kg of 1:1000 (max 6mL), make up to 5mL with normal saline if necessary) and steroids (oral dexamethasone 0.2mL/kg or oral prednisolone 1mg/kg if unable to swallow or very severe dexamethasone 0.6mg/kg IM / IV (max 12mg)). Beware the possibility of rebound.
2. Referring medical staff should be advised to avoid any procedure that may distress the child and precipitate total obstruction, (e.g. throat examination, insert of IV, removing child from the parent or lying the child supine).
3. Flights will normally be Priority 1 and must be doctor-accompanied.
4. Children with severe respiratory distress may be better examined in the hospital or nursing post, in a calm, well lit environment, with resuscitation facilities at hand.
5. Children at risk of requiring intubation must be transferred to the nearest hospital with anaesthetic facilities and an experienced anaesthetist, as the child will require a careful inhalational induction prior to intubation. This could be done at a regional hospital in some cases, prior to transfer to a paediatric intensive care unit in a safer, controlled manner. Otherwise the child should be rapidly transferred to a tertiary centre with minimal handling or intervention.
6. Intubated children should be transferred as soon as possible to definitive care. Meticulous securing of the endotracheal tube (ETT) and positioning of the child's neck and torso, as well as humidification of the ETT is essential to prevent tube displacement or obstruction. The child should have a NGT in situ, and be sedated and paralyzed with full monitoring as for any ventilated paediatric patient.
7. Unintubated children will usually be transported nursed upright by a parent. Oxygen is not required and can mask signs of impending obstruction. No attempt should be made to insert an IV. Monitoring of SaO<sub>2</sub> can usually be done with minimal interruption. Note: A sudden drop in heart rate heralds complete airway obstruction preceding a fall in SaO<sub>2</sub>. Both are pre-terminal events. Intubation and needle cricothyroidotomy equipment (correct size for age) must accompany all stages of transport, as should a doctor. If the child completely obstructs his/her upper airway, the child should be placed supine on the stretcher with optimal positioning of the airway and gently bagged with 100% oxygen. Most children can be kept pink (oxygenated) as obstruction is usually from soft tissue.

If not, one should move rapidly to intubation (using a smaller ETT than normal). If unsuccessful, needle cricothyroidotomy may be required to save the child's life.

The RFDS doctor should ensure the ED and ICU consultants at the destination are aware, so preparation can be made to receive the child.

## **References**

Strange G, Ahrens W, Lelyveld S, et al. Paediatric Emergency Medicine. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. American College of Emergency Physicians. 2009.

Advanced Life Support Group. Advanced Paediatric Life Support. The Practical Approach. 5<sup>th</sup> ed. Blackwell Publishing Ltd. 2005.

Thompson K, Tey D, Marks M. Paediatric Handbook (Royal children's Hospital, Melbourne). 8<sup>th</sup> Ed. Wiley and Blackwell 2009.

Duncan A. Part XV, Chapt. 96. Paediatric Intensive Care. BMJ Books. 1998.

Shann F. Drug Doses. (ICU, Royal Children's Hospital, Melbourne). 15<sup>th</sup> Ed. 2010.

## 11.2 Paediatric Maintenance Fluids

### *Theory*

1. Traditional choices of maintenance fluids in paediatrics have been found to be associated with hyponatremia and cerebral oedema resulting in significant morbidity and mortality.
2. Standard practice in paediatrics has shifted towards the use of isotonic maintenance fluids, 0.9% saline with 5% dextrose is now available commercially and supplies of 0.45% saline with 2.5% dextrose are being withdrawn from paediatric settings.

### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

1. Ensure children over 3 months of age have 0.9% saline with 5% dextrose running as maintenance fluids.
2. Normal saline is still considered an appropriate initial choice for resuscitation.
3. Take specialist paediatric advice for children under 3 months of age.
4. Ensure BSL and sodium are measured pre-flight or on arrival of RFDS staff.
5. Calculate weight based maintenance requirements as follows:
  - a. 4ml/kg/hr for 1<sup>st</sup> 10kg plus
  - b. 2ml/kg/hr for 2<sup>nd</sup> 10kg plus
  - c. 1ml/kg/hr for every subsequent kg.
6. Monitor fluid balance of all children receiving intravenous fluids.

### *References*

Borland, M; Chaney, G; Vyse, D; et al. Consensus Statement on IV Fluid Usage for Maintenance Fluids in Children at PMH. Government of Western Australia, Department of Health, Child and Adolescent Health Service. 14<sup>th</sup> August 2013.



## 11.3 Gastroenteritis/Dehydration In Children

### Theory

1. Infectious gastroenteritis causes diarrhoea with or without vomiting.
2. Most cases can be managed with enteral hydration however the population base that we are often dealing with in our setting tend to present late with much more severe illness.
3. Be careful to consider sepsis and surgical causes of acute abdomen in the differential diagnosis.
4. Children at risk of severe illness include those with failure to thrive, congenital illnesses, and chronic disease.
5. Those who have had attempts at rehydration with inappropriate (hyper or hypotonic) solutions (sports drinks, soft drinks (diluted or otherwise), plain water require close attention and warrant checking electrolytes and glucose.
6. There is evidence to suggest that enteral rehydration has better outcomes than parenteral and that parenteral be reserved for correction of shock with early institution of enteral rehydration.
7. Assessing degree of dehydration can be difficult, mild dehydration carries no reliable clinical signs, though may be thirsty. Where available an accurate weight loss is very helpful.

Table 12. Dehydration in Children

| Moderate dehydration (4-6%)    | Severe dehydration ( $\geq 7\%$ )   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Capillary refill time $>2$ sec | Capillary refill time $>3$ sec  |
| Increased respiratory rate     | Deep acidotic breathing   |
| Mild decrease in tissue turgor | Decreased tissue turgor   |
|                                | Signs of shock (tachycardia, irritable or reduced conscious level, hypotension, anuria) |

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Flights for children with moderate – severe dehydration will usually be Priority 1 or 2, doctor accompanied, depending on the facilities at the referring institution.
2. Assess the degree of dehydration clinically.
3. Calculate fluid requirements.
  - A. Deficit:
    - Estimate according to the clinical picture.
    - Use last known body weight when well (if available & recent) and current weight to calculate % dehydration. If shocked work on a basis of 10% dehydration after restoration of circulating volume with 20mL/kg IV bolus.
    - A useful formula for fluid deficit is
      - Fluid Deficit (mL) = [% dehydration] x [weight (kg)] x 10
      - eg. 10 kg child, 7.5% dehydrated, deficit =  $7.5 \times 10 \times 10 = 750$  mL
  - B. Maintenance requirements:
    - First 10 kg body wt – 4 mL/kg/hr
    - Second 10 kg body wt – 2 mL/kg/hr
    - Every kg  $> 20$ kg – 1 mL/kg/hr

- C. Ongoing losses:
- Difficult to estimate, therefore frequently review clinically and adjust rates accordingly.
- D. Total fluid requirements = A + B + C
4. Method of Rehydration; Even vomiting children tolerate NGT rehydration well, with the vomiting often subsiding. Breast feeding should be continued.
- a) Mild dehydration – usually able to rehydrate orally (10-20mL /kg /hour) or via NGT using oral rehydration solution (ORS) with 10mL/kg for every watery stool.
- b) Moderate dehydration – Rapid NGT rehydration (50mL/kg (ORS) over 4 hrs) may be suitable for those > 6months. <6months correct more slowly with NGT (ORS) with ½ fluid in first 6 hours then remainder over next 18 hours.
- c) Severe dehydration –
- Correct shock with 20mL /kg bolus IV N/Saline (ICU admission likely if needs 40 mL/kg).
  - Check electrolytes.
  - For severe dehydration or those with severe vomiting, *slower rehydration* aiming to replace ½ fluid over first 8 hours and ½ over next 16 hours (except with hyponatremia, aim to replace over 36-48 hrs).
  - If unable to commence NGT then use N/Sal with 5% dextrose unless hyponatremic. If hyponatremic seek early paediatric advice.
- Reassess regularly, noting ongoing losses, urine output and SG.
5. If no improvement consider other underlying disorders (e.g. sepsis, DKA) or severe electrolyte disturbance.
6. Investigations:
- Beware hypoglycaemia – infants and small children may require a higher concentration of dextrose. If in doubt, discuss with Paediatric ED Consultant, or regional Paediatrician.
  - Hypokalaemia – common and frequently severe. Add KCl at a rate of 0.3 mmol/kg/hr. Child may appear floppy.
  - Sodium – beware hypo/hypernatraemia.
7. There is some limited evidence for the use of a single dose of ondansetron with significant vomiting in children over 8 kg:
- 8-15kg 2mg wafer
  - 15-30kg 4mg wafer
  - >30kg 8mg wafer
- There is no place for antidiarrhoeals or maxolon.

## Medical Chest Items

Gastrolyte Effervescent Tablets (Item 76)

## References

Advanced Life Support Group. Advanced Paediatric Life Support. The Practical Approach. 5<sup>th</sup> ed. Blackwell Publishing Ltd. 2005.

Royal Children's Hospital, Melbourne, Australia, Clinical Practice Guideline on Gastroenteritis, [Internet, last updated ?2011; cited 13/12/2011], Available from: <http://www.rch.org.au/clinicalguide/index.cfm>

Shann. F. Drug Doses. ICU Royal Children's Hospital, Melbourne. 15<sup>th</sup> Ed. 2010.

Princess Margaret Hospital for Children, Perth, Australia, Emergency Department Clinical Guideline on Gastroenteritis, Last reviewed December 2010.

## 11.4 Neonate Retrievals

### Theory

Generally patients up to 28 days of age (corrected for prematurity) are regarded as neonates. In Western Australia the Neonatal Emergency Transfer Service is charged with the clinical care for these babies utilising RFDS aircraft and flight nurses. This responsibility also applies to paediatricians employed by WACHS in Port Hedland and Broome.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Treatment

1. The referral to RFDS is usually from the PMH Neonate Unit (NETS) or regional Paediatrician. The authorisation of the flight is the responsibility of the assessing RFDS medical officer, not PMH. If the request does not appear appropriate, consult the Director of Medical Services or Deputy.
2. If a request for such an infant comes from another source the assessing RFDS doctor should notify NETS or the regional Paediatrician of the case to ensure appropriate management.
3. All flight requests for a neonatal retrieval where the baby is not yet delivered must be discussed with the DMS or his Deputy. Nearly always if the mother is an active labour (even if advanced) and complicated or the baby is preterm, these patients are best transferred with baby in-utero. Flights should be Priority 1 or 2, accompanied by an RFDS doctor with tocolysis. Delivery at a tertiary centre with neonatal ICU facilities is likely to result in a better outcome for the baby than delivery elsewhere.
4. Flights for unborn babies are usually better conducted without a Paediatrician or cot, due to:
  - quicker response time
  - no room for the Paediatrician to resuscitate the infant as the neonatal cot occupies the 2<sup>nd</sup> stretcher
  - if the neonatal cot is on board, this limits access to the mother if she does deliver, especially if assistance is required.
5. Occasionally the Paediatrician will determine that a NETS retrieval is not necessary and the flight can be undertaken by RFDS staff alone. If this seems appropriate, we will undertake the flight, otherwise PMH or the regional Paediatrician (Port Hedland, Broome) should be requested to send their neonatal registrar or travel themselves. RFDS doctors are not trained in neonate retrieval per se and should not be coerced into performing retrievals outside their individual skill mix.
6. The Paediatrician may not have a lot of details on the baby and may not know the condition of the mother, so it is usual to contact the referring country doctor for more details, especially regarding the mother.
7. Neonatal retrievals should be prioritized as a Priority 1 or 2 as for other flights, even though response times for Priority 1 flights may be delayed awaiting arrival of the Paediatrician.
8. A sea level cabin may be required for babies with respiratory distress or GIT obstruction. The pilot may be asked to avoid turbulence for babies that are unstable or very preterm. Meets are contra-indicated in neonatal retrievals. The Paediatrician will always go into the hospital with the cot and Flight Nurse.
9. The RFDS Medical Officer should decide whether the mother is suitable to accompany the baby to PMH, however the demands of the baby may prevent adequate care of the mother if she is unwell. PMH have a small number of beds for mothers of sick neonates and have a visiting midwife. A mother can only stay there if a bed is available and she has had a normal delivery and is completely self-caring without complications.

Otherwise it is usually best for the mother to remain in the country until discharged, then she can make her own way down. Sometimes sick mothers will be transferred to KEMH, but the baby still goes to PMH. If the mother is well, she travels as a passenger as she is not actually admitted to PMH.

10. The RFDS Medical Officer should also consider interim management when discussing the baby with the referring GP as he may or may not have received advice from a Paediatrician (for instance, he may only have spoken to a Nurse). Advice regarding oxygen therapy, checking blood sugar levels, fluid requirements and antibiotics may be required or the doctor can be referred back to the Paediatrician.
11. The Perth-based FESA helicopter cannot undertake neonate retrievals.
12. The Kimberley Paediatricians are based in Broome and are responsible for getting themselves to Derby in time for departure (Broome Health Service has an arrangement with a local air charter company to fly the Paediatrician to Broome)

## 11.5 Intranasal Fentanyl

### Theory

Atomized nasal medications are absorbed directly into the blood stream, avoiding first pass metabolism.

The MAD Nasal Drug Delivery Device is a fast and effective way to deliver medications without needles and is particularly useful for children.

### Indications for use

Initial analgesia for children aged 1 year and older, in moderate to severe pain, with

- Fractures and dislocations
- Burns
- Major lacerations
- Painful procedures



Figure 24. MAD Nasal Drug Delivery Device

### Contraindications

- Known Fentanyl hypersensitivity
- Altered conscious state, sedated and not easily roused
- Bilateral occluded nasal passage
- Epistaxis

### Dose

1. Use 100µg/2mL strength Fentanyl solution for intravenous use.
2. **First dose - 1.5 µg / kg dose**
3. A second dose may be administered 10 minutes after the first to provide adequate analgesia - **0.75 - 1.5µg/kg**
4. After 2<sup>nd</sup> dose, if further analgesia is required, review and consider alternative or additional analgesia.

### Administration

1. Draw up appropriate dose for weight (see table) plus 0.1mL extra to the first dose (to account for the dead space in the device).
2. Attach Mucosal Atomiser Device on to the end of the syringe.
3. With the child sitting at approximately 45 degrees or with head to one side, insert the device loosely into the nostril and press the plunger quickly.
4. Dose should be *divided equally* between nostrils.
5. Patient should be awake or easily rousable prior to each dose and standard observations including SaO<sub>2</sub> taken regularly.
6. To improve effectiveness, minimize volume and maximize concentration. 1/3 mL per nostril is ideal, 1 mL is maximum. Use an appropriately concentrated drug.
7. Maximize total mucosal absorptive surface area. Atomize the drug (rather than drip it in) to cover a broad surface area. Use both nostrils to double the absorptive surface area.
8. Aim slightly up and outwards to cover the turbinates and olfactory mucosa.

## Dosage schedule for Intranasal Fentanyl

Table 13. Dosage Schedule for Intranasal Fentanyl

| Weight estimate (kg) | Initial dose (1.5µg/kg) (µg) | Volume – Initial dose (mL) | Top-up dose (0.75 - 1.5µg) (µg) | Volume - Top-up dose (mL) |
|----------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 10                   | 15                           | 0.3                        | 7.5 - 15                        | 0.15 - 0.3                |
| 12                   | 18                           | 0.35                       | 9 - 18                          | 0.2 - 0.35                |
| 14                   | 20                           | 0.4                        | 10 - 20                         | 0.2 - 0.4                 |
| 16                   | 24                           | 0.5                        | 12 - 24                         | 0.25 - 0.5                |
| 18                   | 27                           | 0.55                       | 13.5 - 27                       | 0.25 - 0.55               |
| 20 - 24              | 30                           | 0.6                        | 15 - 30                         | 0.3 - 0.6                 |
| 25 - 29              | 37.5                         | 0.75                       | 18.75 - 37.5                    | 0.35 - 0.75               |
| 30 - 34              | 40                           | 0.8                        | 20 - 40                         | 0.4 - 0.8                 |
| 35 - 39              | 52.5                         | 1.05                       | 26.5 - 52.5                     | 0.5 - 1.5                 |
| 40 - 44              | 60                           | 1.2                        | 30 - 60                         | 0.6 - 1.2                 |
| 45 - 49              | 67.5                         | 1.35                       | 67.5                            | 0.65 - 1.35               |
| > 50                 | 75                           | 1.5                        | 37.5 - 75                       | 0.75 - 1.5                |

### Side effects

- Side effects are uncommon, but may include:
- Respiratory depression
- Hypotension
- Nausea and vomiting
- Pruritis
- Chest wall rigidity (only reported in large intravenous doses)

Treatment of overdose includes:

- Airway support and oxygen
- Assist ventilation
- Consider Naloxone bolus 0.1mg/kg IM or IV, maximum 2mg

### References

Royal Children's Hospital, Clinical Practice Guidelines, (accessed 18 December 2012)

[http://www.rch.org.au/clinicalguide/guideline\\_index/Intranasal\\_fentanyl/](http://www.rch.org.au/clinicalguide/guideline_index/Intranasal_fentanyl/)

Using the LMA MAD Nasal™ Mucosal Atomization Device. LMA 623-08/12. Wolfe Tory Medical Inc.

## 12 RESPIRATORY

### 12.1 Pulmonary Embolism

#### Theory

1. Pulmonary embolism may be major (life-threatening) or minor. However, missed minor pulmonary embolism or venous thromboembolism (VTE) carries a mortality rate of 15-20%.
2. Minor pulmonary embolism may result in no symptoms or non-specific symptoms. These include tachypnoea, dyspnoea, tachycardia, mild pyrexia, pleuritic chest pain or pleural rub. Most reliable risk factors include:
  - previous history of VTE
  - family history of VTE
  - unilateral swelling of one lower limb
  - pregnancy (6-9 times increased risk), oestrogen use
  - recent surgery (x 4 weeks)
  - malignancy
  - known clotting tendency (e.g. protein C or S deficiency)
  - pleuritic chest pain
  - $\text{SaO}_2 < 95\%$  on air
3. Major pulmonary embolism can cause sudden collapse or death. The patient may have syncopal symptoms and recover, or remain hypotensive. This is often associated with central chest heaviness or discomfort, dyspnoea and a sensation of impending doom. There may also be signs of pulmonary hypertension and/or (R) heart failure. These include (R) parasternal heave, raised JVP and loud/delayed 2<sup>nd</sup> heart sound.
4. Investigations include:
  - a) clinical features or risks for DVT
  - b) ECG:
    - sinus tachycardia is most common
    - (R) axis deviation or (R) BBB
    - the classical S1, Q3, T3 pattern is uncommon and not specific for PE
  - c) D-dimer:
    - only available at regional hospitals
    - non-specific
  - d) ABGs:
    - Hypoxia and more commonly a low  $\text{PCO}_2 \pm$  respiratory alkalosis secondary to hyperventilation.
  - e) CXR:
    - not always available. Used mainly to exclude other diagnoses (e.g. pneumonia). May be normal or have subtle, non-specific changes (e.g. blunted costophrenic angle, raised hemidiaphragm or plate-like atelectasis. Less common is pulmonary infarctions.
  - f) Diagnosis usually requires CTPA and/or V/Q nuclear medicine scan.

### ***Pre-flight and In-flight Treatment***

1. The priority and necessity for a doctor will depend on the clinical status of the patient and local resources for treating and diagnosis.
2. Oxygen to correct hypoxia – sea level pressurisation not required.
3. Circulatory support including IV fluids +/- inotropes may be required.
4. Analgesia as required.
5. Anticoagulation:
  - a) Heparin
    - sodium heparin 5000 IUs followed by an infusion at 1000 IUs/hr. (See drug infusion guidelines).
  - b) Thrombolysis
    - Has been shown to decrease mortality in patients with massive pulmonary embolism and evidence of shock.
    - Tenecteplase is the thrombolytic carried by RFDS, most WACHS hospitals carry reteplase, trials specifically using these have not been undertaken however other thrombolytic agents (rtPA, streptokinase and urokinase) have been trialled at similar doses used for treating STEMI.
6. Communicate with ED/ICU consultants for patients with massive pulmonary embolism regarding patient's condition and need for ICU intervention or bed.

### ***References***

Brown A, Cadogan D. Emergency Medicine: Emergency and Acute Medicine Diagnosis and Management. 5<sup>th</sup> Ed. Oxford University Press. 2006.

Clinical Evidence. Issue 9. 2003. BMJ Publishing Group

Shann, F. Drug Doses. ICU Royal Children's Hospital, Melbourne 15<sup>th</sup> Ed. 2010.

Diepenbrock H. Quick Reference to Critical Care. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins. 2008.



## 12.2 Acute Asthma

### Theory

1. Definition – asthma is defined as recurrent bronchospasm (often with thick mucous plugging) that is reversible. It is very common in Australia. Previous episode(s) of severe asthma requiring ICU management or artificial ventilation are strong predictors of further episodes of acute severe asthma, as is under-treatment or poor compliance.
2. Recognition of acute severe asthma or life-threatening asthma:
  - a) Ensure correct diagnosis (“all that wheezes isn’t asthma”; similarly severe asthma may cause a “silent chest” due to little air movement in or out). Death is nearly always due to hypoxia.
  - b) Clinical signs of severity include:
    - severe respiratory distress with use of accessory muscles
    - inability to talk, or only speaks in words
    - chest hyperinflation
    - silence in auscultation
    - exhaustion resulting in reduced respiratory effort, and reduced respiratory rate
    - tachycardia (rarely due to drug treatment alone)
    - altered conscious state
    - $\text{SaO}_2 \leq 92\%$  or  $\text{PaO}_2 \leq 60$  mmHg on high flow  $\text{O}_2$
    - normal or increasing  $\text{PaCO}_2$  causing respiratory acidosis
    - cyanosis is a very late sign indicating impending respiratory arrest
3. Intubation and ventilation is fraught with difficulty however:
  - should be considered for any of the above, not responding quickly to treatment.
  - should be carried out prior to impending or actual cardiorespiratory arrest
  - should be carried out prior to transport, if not responding to treatment and exhaustion is likely during transport duration.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Sit patient up with handrails to make it easier to use accessory muscles.
2. High flow  $\text{O}_2$  by mask, to keep  $\text{SaO}_2 \geq 92\%$
3. Inhaled salbutamol via spacer repeated 20 minutely (6 puffs if <6 years, 12 puffs if > 6 years) or continuous salbutamol by nebulizer, 5mg diluted with normal saline
4. IV or IM corticosteroids (e.g. IV hydrocortisone 1-2mg/kg)
5. Add ipratropium bromide (atrovent) -.5mg to nebulizer 4-6 hourly
6. If not improving consider adding:
  - IV salbutamol 250µg (Children 4-5µg/kg) IV as loading dose over 10 min, followed by infusion of 3-20 (Children 1-5µg/kg/min) µg/min (ref Drug Infusion Guidelines section)
  - IV  $\text{Mg}_2\text{SO}_4$  25-100mg/kg over 20min, then 30mg/kg/hr.
  - IV aminophylline 5mg/kg loading dose over 1 hour, followed by infusion 0.5mg/kg/hr. May cause significant arrhythmias.
7. Consider Adrenaline
  - Inhaled (adrenaline 1%, 0.05 mL/kg diluted to 5mL with normal saline by nebulizer)
  - IM 0.01mg/kg
  - Consider the above early if patient in primary setting (e.g. station or nursing post)

8. If intubation required:
- Ketamine is recommended as induction agent 1-2mg/kg IV. NB requires separate line as not compatible with above infusions.
  - Pre-oxygenate patient with 100% O<sub>2</sub> sitting up. Aim for best SaO<sub>2</sub> possible, which may take several minutes. Only lie patient supine once anaesthetised. Avoid excessive bag valve mask ventilation as high airway resistance will result in a tendency to over inflate the stomach.
  - Once intubated, sedated and paralyzed patient may be difficult to ventilate, requiring high pressures and a low RR :
    - Dynamic hyperinflation (“auto-peep”) - air trapping results in breath-stacking (i.e. inspiration occurs before full expiration resulting in progressively greater lung volume), this can cause hypotension due to reduced venous return. May mimic tension pneumothorax. Maintain as great an expiratory time as possible (I:E ratio 1:3 – 1:5).
    - Avoid PEEP.
    - Permissive hypercapnia is a strategy allowing the PaCO<sub>2</sub> to increase (up to 80mmHg), whilst maintaining adequate oxygenation with slower or small tidal volumes (4-8mL/kg ideal body weight) rather than use of large tidal volumes and high pressure which will cause increased risk of pneumothorax, breath-stacking etc.
    - Patients may do better with slow, gentle hand bagging if problems with mechanical ventilation continue.
9. Cardiac arrest – usually a terminal event due to severe hypoxia, acidosis or tension pneumothorax (may be bilateral).
10. Paediatric patients – higher risk due to:
- small airways – higher risk of mucus plugging
  - higher risk of oedema of mucosal lining of airways
  - diaphragmatic breathers – young children < 1- y.o. rely solely on their diaphragm to breathe. Increased gastric inflation may cause diaphragmatic splinting early on
  - more prone to severe acidosis secondary to high PaCO<sub>2</sub>.
11. All patients with acute severe asthma should be Priority 1 or 2, doctor accompanied and may need a sea-level cabin pressure.

### **Medical Chest Items**

Salbutamol aerosol spray 100mcg (Item 107), Breath-a-tech spacer and face mask (Item 229 and 230), Prednisolone tablets 5mg (Item 151).

### **References**

- Bersten A, Soni N. Oh's Intensive Care Manual. 6th ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009.
- Australian Resuscitation Council. Advanced Life Support Manual p129-131. 201.
- Shann F. Drug Doses. ICU Royal Children's Hospital, Melbourne 15<sup>th</sup> Ed. 2011.
- Brown A, Cadogan M. Emergency Medicine. Emergency and Acute Medicine Diagnosis and Management. 5<sup>th</sup> Ed. Oxford University Press. 2006.
- Diepenbrink N. Quick Reference to Critical Care. Lipincott et al 3<sup>rd</sup> Ed. 2008.
- Siwik, J, Nowak R, Zoratti, E. The Evaluation and Management of Acute Severe Asthma. *Medical Clinics of North America* Vol 86 p1049-1071 2002.
- National Asthma Council Australia. Asthma Management Handbook 2006. National Asthma Council Australia, Melbourne.
- Beed M, Sherman R, Mahajan R. Emergencies in Critical Care. Oxford: Oxford University Press 2007.

## 12.3 Bronchiolitis

### Theory

1. Inflammation and obstruction of the small airways (bronchioles) in infants (i.e. under 12 months). Mostly due to viral infection with RSV, parainfluenza or adenoviruses.
2. Clinical features include tachypnoea, tachycardia, respiratory distress, apnoeas and fine crepitations and wheezes on auscultation of the lungs.
3. Peak of severity usually around 2-3 days.
4. Indications for transfer are an inability to drink, increasing oxygen requirements and apnoeas. There should be a lower threshold for transferring younger infants or infants from primary sites.
5. Gas expansion at altitude and hypoxia during air transport poses a risk to patients with significant air trapping or hypoxemia.
6. High risk children include ex-premature, congenital heart disease, neurological conditions, chronic illness.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Pre-flight assessment should confirm the diagnosis and oxygen requirements of the child. Most flights will be Priority 1 or 2 and will be doctor-accompanied if child is very young, respiratory distress is severe or recurrent apnoeas are a problem.
2. The mainstay of treatment is supportive, ensuring oxygenation and hydration.
3. Smaller babies are best nursed in a Thermocot where oxygen concentrations and temperatures are more easily controlled. Older infants may be nursed on a parent's lap with oxygen delivered by facemask. In both situations oxygen should be titrated to keep  $\text{SaO}_2 \geq 95\%$  and to reduce respiratory distress.
4. Due to significant air trapping, children with more than mild bronchiolitis should be flown with sea level pressurisation.
5. High flow humidified oxygen via nasal prongs is now commonly instituted in larger centres for children with hypoxia and moderate to severe respiratory distress despite Hudson mask or head box oxygen. (See [High Flow Nasal Cannula Therapy](#)). There are significant logistical implications currently with this therapy.
6. In severely ill infants intubation and ventilation may be necessary, possibly requiring assistance from an Anaesthetist or Paediatrician. The administration of IV Aminophylline 10mg/kg reduces respiratory muscle fatigue, stimulates the respiratory centre and prevents apnoeas. Advice from paediatric intensivist ought to be sought if considering these measures.

### Special Notes

1. Children who are unable to drink should receive IV fluids.
2. There is an overlap between bronchiolitis and asthma. Older infants who have had recurrent episodes or who have a strong family history of asthma should be considered for a trial of bronchodilator (e.g. salbutamol  $\pm$  ipratropium bromide neb). Generally infants < 9-12 months have not yet developed the receptors to respond to these drugs and nebulisers should be withheld as they can make younger infants severely hypoxic.

### References

Strange G, Ahrens W, Lelyveld S, et al. Paediatric Emergency Medicine. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. American College of Emergency Physicians. 2009.

Vaughan V, Behrman R. Nelson Textbook of Paediatrics. 13<sup>th</sup> ed. Saunders. 1987.

## 13 TOXICOLOGY

### 13.1 Snakebite

#### Theory

Australia's venomous snakes are all *elapids* meaning they have front fangs. Although Australian snake venoms are among the most toxic in the world, a bite does not always result in venom being injected and if it is, it is usually subcutaneous and taken up by the lymphatic system. Therefore appropriate first aid includes a pressure immobilization bandage (PIB), splinting and resting the patient.

Australian snake venoms contain procoagulants which cause a severe consumptive coagulopathy (VICC), often in an otherwise asymptomatic patient. Some venoms may contain neurotoxins causing muscle paralysis which may result in respiratory failure and death from paralysis of the respiratory muscles. Microangiopathic haemolytic anaemia (MAHA) and thrombocytopaenia are also less common complications of brown snake envenomation.

Sudden hypotension and collapse, sometimes causing death, within an hour of being bitten is a rare complication of brown snake envenoming.

#### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. All patients with known or suspected snake bite require evacuation to a hospital with 24 hour resuscitation and laboratory facilities as well as stocks of antivenom. This is either a regional hospital or, for severely envenomed or complicated patients, a tertiary ICU. Flights are priority 1 or 2 depending on local facilities, and should always be doctor-accompanied, however logistics will sometimes result in the most expedient solution for a patient in a primary setting being on occasion a diversion of a nurse only flight, clearly this is a compromise.
2. The pre-flight assessment should include details of the bite and circumstances in which it occurred. Bites are often painless so snake bite should be considered in anyone presenting with unexplained collapse, vomiting and abdominal pain, coagulopathy or paralysis. Young children frequently cannot give a history so one must maintain a high index of suspicion.
3. Check airway, breathing (including ventilatory support if necessary) and that IV access has been obtained and hypotension corrected.
4. **Confirm appropriate first aid** (PIB should use an elastic rather than crepe bandage, include the whole limb and be applied as tightly as one would for a sprained ankle). Splinting and resting the patient can delay the spread of venom systemically for many hours.
5. Consider early contact with a consultant toxicologist by calling **13 11 26**, or through any of the major teaching hospitals in Perth, as management of snake bite is constantly being updated as new research comes to light. A toxicologist can advise on the most likely type of snake, given the circumstances of the bite and geographical location. The toxicologist can then advise the most appropriate type(s) and quantities of monovalent antivenom(s). Polyvalent antivenom which contains antivenoms for all Australian snake types is rarely used and carries a higher risk of anaphylaxis, NB. children should receive the same amount of antivenom as adults (as the amount of venom injected is the same).
6. Venom Detection Kits (VDK) – these are used much less often now as they can be tricky to use and have many false positives. In WA the expert opinion of a toxicologist regarding snake type(s) is considered more reliable. If using the kit a saline swab from the bite site (cut a window in the PIB - do not remove) is most reliable. VDK's only determine the type of snake from venom deposited on the skin at the bite site. They do NOT indicate whether or not the patient is envenomed, and alone are not an indication to give antivenom.

Methods of identification of snake other than those above (e.g. description of the snake) are notoriously unreliable and should not be used.

7. Whole blood clotting time (WBCT) – This simple bedside test will detect any coagulopathy and can be carried out preflight or inflight and a positive result is considered sufficient evidence for the administration of antivenom. To perform a WBCT:
  - Obtain 10 mL of blood from patient by venepuncture
  - Place in a *glass* tube or container
  - Let stand for 20 minutes (do not agitate)
  - Then *tilt* container once only
  - If blood specimen is *not* clotted this implies a severe coagulopathy, i.e. patient is envenomed
8. Inflight management should include the following :
  - On arrival check appropriate first aid is in place – reinforce PIB if necessary but do not remove
  - Check history and for clinical signs of envenoming as above
  - Perform WBCT if not done
  - Consider calling Toxicologist for advice
  - Antivenom must be given immediately if indicated
9. Antivenom is only given for the following indications :
  - Coagulopathy – Spontaneous bleeding (e.g. from gums, nose or bite site) or positive WBCT or formal laboratory results. Point of care INR tests eg. ISTAT are NOT reliable in this setting and may default to normal in the setting of overwhelming coagulopathy
  - Note: Venom-induced consumptive coagulopathy (VICC) is a late complication that does not respond to further antivenom and may require blood products to correct it (e.g. FFP)
  - Signs of neurotoxicity – Early signs are ptosis and diplopia, which can progress to general paralysis and respiratory failure due to paralysis of respiratory muscles, often insidiously
  - Collapse or hypotension where other causes are excluded
  - Evidence of acute renal failure secondary to rhabdomyolysis

Non-specific symptoms e.g. headache, sweating, vomiting, abdominal pain, are not alone indications for giving antivenom.
10. Antivenom must be given diluted with normal saline IV over 20 – 30 minutes. It should only be given in the presence of an RFDS Medical Officer and when resuscitation facilities are at hand. Although anaphylaxis is rare, Adrenaline should be drawn up but is not used as premedication, nor are antihistamines. Correction of coagulopathy requires 12-24 hours for the liver to replace clotting factors, this is not hastened by further doses of anti-venom. Commence with 1 unit of antivenom and consult a toxicologist regarding further antivenom or administration of blood products. PIB must not be removed until patient reaches his/her destination.
11. Administer tetanus prophylaxis if indicated.

## References

Lecture notes by Prof. George Jelinek (WA Toxicology Service ) 2009

Lecture by Dr Ovidiu Pascu - RPH at RFDS base Jandakot 6 May 2010

Isbister G, Little M, Cull G, et al. Thrombotic microangiopathy from Australian brown snake (*Pseudonaja*) envenoming. *Intern Med J.* 2007 Aug; 37(8): 523-528.

Isbister G, Scorgie F, Seldon M. Clinical relevance of Brown snake (*Pseudonaja* sp) factor V escaping haemostatic regulation. *Blood: J of Am Soc Haematology.* 2009 Sept; 114 (12)

Shine R. Australian Snakes – A Natural History. New Holland Publishers. 1998

Sutherland S, Tibballs J. Australian Animal Toxins: The creatures, their toxins and care of the poisoned patient. Oxford University Press. Melbourne. 1983.

Sutherland S, King K. Management of Snakebite Injuries. Monograph ; Royal Flying Doctor Service of Australia. 1992.

Sutherland S. Antivenom Use in Australia: Premedication, adverse reactions and use of venom detection kits. *Med J Aust.* 1992 Dec 7-21;157(11-12): 734-739.

Wilson G. M. (1995). Depressed Myocardial Contractility following Massive Envenomation by an Unknown Snake. *Emergency Medicine*, 7(1): 23-26.

## 13.2 Red-back Spider Bite (RBSB)

### Theory

1. The Australian Red-back Spider (*Lactrodectus mactans hasselti*) is widespread throughout Australia, both in bushland and around gardens and homes. Only bites from the female cause envenomation in man.
2. The venom causes the release of neurotransmitters from the neuromuscular junction, plus widespread release of catecholamines. Symptoms include a sharp pricking sensation followed by development of intense pain, redness and sweating at bite site. Pain may spread along a limb or commence at other sites (e.g. opposite limb) and is frequently associated with bizarre patches of sweating. Severe envenomation can involve severe hypertension, tachycardia, muscle fasciculations or weakness, and incoordination. Symptoms in infants include persistent screaming, tachycardia and redness. In pregnant women RBSB has been known to precipitate pre-term labour.
3. Envenomation is not life-threatening and resuscitation rarely required.
4. Morbidity is high and illness may become chronic in the absence of antivenom. Antivenom can be given days - weeks later for persistent symptoms. Deaths have been ascribed to RBSB prior to 1960 (when no antivenom was available). No deaths have occurred since 1960.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Not all patients with RBSB are envenomated, and many can be treated with antivenom locally. Flight requests are most likely to come from stations and nursing posts without antivenom. RBSB is rarely life threatening, and never immediately, so flights will generally be Priority 3, or occasionally 2.
2. Pre-flight assessment should cover areas such as recommended first aid (local crushed ice and water pack ± simple analgesics), need for antivenom and advice on how to give it.
3. Flight needs to be doctor accompanied if there is consideration being given to administering antivenom in flight (seriously envenomated patients only).
4. RFDS does not carry Red-back Spider antivenom, so this must be accessed from the regional or city hospital prior to departure.
5. In flight, all patients receiving antivenom require continuous ECG/NIBP/SpO<sub>2</sub> monitoring, and IV. Premedication with adrenaline is not necessary. Antivenom is administered as a single dose of 2 ampoules (=1000 units) given IM or diluted in 100mL N Saline given over 20 minutes. It is common to require more than one dose, this may be repeated in 1-2 hours if symptoms persist. Antivenom is administered IV to those seriously envenomated or those patients in whom multiple IM doses have been incompletely effective.
6. Patients who have received antivenom should be watched or followed up at 24 hours prior to discharge, as symptoms necessitating further antivenom may recur.
7. In the event of an allergic reaction to antivenom, CEASE ANTIVENOM IMMEDIATELY, then follow the guideline on "Acute Anaphylaxis".
8. Other treatment may include analgesics, diazepam and tetanus prophylaxis.
9. New research in this area is pending and these recommendations may change, discuss with a toxicologist if in doubt available via Poisons Information line on 13 11 26.

## ***References***

Sutherland S. Australian Animal Toxins: The Creatures, Their Toxins and Care of the Poisoned Patient. Oxford University Press, 1983.

Dunn R, Dilley S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.

Personal communication with Dr George Jelinek, Professor of Emergency Medicine, University of Western Australia, 1997.

Murray L, Daly F, Little M, et al. Toxicology Handbook. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Churchill Livingstone. 2011.



## 13.3 Irukandji Syndrome

### Theory

The Irukandji syndrome is a collection of hypercatecholaminergic symptoms arising from jellyfish envenomation.

Signs and symptoms include severe generalised pain, associated with autonomic effects, cardiomyopathy and cardiogenic pulmonary oedema.

The syndrome is well documented in northern Queensland and in the Northern Territory, caused by the small jellyfish *Carukia barnesi*, amongst others. *C. barnesi* has not been found in Western Australia, but Irukandji syndrome is a significant clinical issue around the beaches of Broome and the Dampier Peninsula. The causative jellyfish in this region is yet to be identified.

Note: The large box jellyfish, *Chironex fleckeri*, which causes big welt marks with severe, immediate pain and can be fatal, is a separate entity and has not been found in Western Australia.

### Mechanism of envenomation

Nematocysts are the stinging cells on the tentacles and bodies of jellyfish. These contain venom and a hollow shaft, which penetrates the skin of the victim upon contact, delivers the venom.

### Symptoms and signs of envenomation

**Symptoms:** Generally minimal discomfort for 20-30 minutes after the sting, then symptoms are variable:

- severe generalised pain involving particularly back, abdomen, chest and muscles
- nausea, vomiting
- headaches
- anxiety, agitation and a feeling of impending doom

**Signs:** May include:

- erythema at the sting site
- diaphoresis
- tachycardia
- hypertension
- Cardiac involvement in severe cases:
  - i. ECG changes (T wave inversion and ST segment depression)
  - ii. Progressing to myocardial depression with elevated troponin
  - iii. Then cardiogenic pulmonary oedema and cardiogenic shock

The generalised pain usually takes 6-12 hours to resolve, and cardiac involvement may require ICU supportive care for 2-3 days.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

#### First Aid:

1. Apply vinegar-soaked combine to the sting site for at least one minute, as vinegar can neutralise venom in nematocysts which have not been discharged.
2. Then immerse in hot water or hot shower.
3. If in a suitable location, skin scrapings can be taken for identification after the vinegar application. Skin scrapings are placed in 1-4% formalin for microscopy.

**Treatment for local symptoms only:**

Treat symptomatically. If no systemic symptoms after 1 hour the patient can be discharged +/- oral analgesia and antiemetic, with instructions to return if symptoms recur.

**Treatment for systemic symptoms:**

1. Give fentanyl 0.5 microgram/kg IV or 0.05mg/kg IV every 10 mins until pain is controlled.
2. Give promethazine up to 25mg IV/IM for nausea.
3. Observe 15-minutely pulse BP, RR, SpO<sub>2</sub>.

**Further management if pain or symptoms not controlled:**

1. Perform ECG, CXR, troponins, U&E.
2. If hypertensive despite opiate, consider GTN infusion IV.
3. If pain not settling consider magnesium bolus and infusion (discuss with Toxicologist).
4. Be vigilant for pulmonary oedema and treat as per pulmonary oedema guidelines.
5. Repeat troponin 6 hourly.
6. Magnesium has been used in this setting but its use has not been supported by clinical trials.

**Indications for transfer to tertiary facility:**

1. Signs or symptoms of pulmonary oedema.
2. ECG/ biochemical evidence of cardiac dysfunction.

**Transport of patients with Irukandji syndrome:**

1. Flights should be doctor-accompanied, priority 2 or 1. There is a likelihood of massive opiate requirements for pain and a possibility of evolving pulmonary oedema and cardiac dysfunction.
2. RFDS doctors are advised to make contact with the on-call Toxicologist through the hospital switchboard or Poisons Information (ph **13 11 26**).
3. The patient may require ventilation for cardiogenic pulmonary oedema, or to counteract respiratory depression from massive opiate requirements for severe pain.
4. Magnesium infusion is still contentious and should be discussed with the on-call Toxicologist.

**References**

Bailey PM, Little M, Jelinek GA, Wilce JA. Jellyfish envenoming syndromes: unknown toxic mechanisms and unproven theories. *MJA* 2003; 178: 34-37

Makrocanis CJ, Hall NL, Mein JK. Irukandji syndrome in Northern Western Australia: an emerging health problem. *MJA* 2004; 181 (11/12): 699-702

Isbitser GK. Managing injuries by venomous sea creatures in Australia. *Aust Presc* 2007;30:117-21

Broome District Hospital Emergency Department protocol, 2006

## 13.4 An Approach To Poisoning

### Theory

1. Despite a wide variety of potential poisons and envenomations that may present it is vital to have a standardized approach to the management of these patients.
2. Resuscitation is followed by risk assessment and more specific management decisions which may require consultation with a Toxicologist.

### Pre-flight and In-flight management

1. Assess ABC. Airway may be compromised by direct trauma from the toxin or by respiratory depression from centrally acting agents. A GCS score alone is not a good predictor of risk of aspiration in this setting and an airway may need to be secured for a relatively high GCS. Ensure a safe airway, adequate oxygenation and ventilation. At least 2 secure IV cannulae should be in place for those requiring transport.
2. Many agents predisposed to arrhythmia, all patients should have a 12 lead ECG and continuous cardiac monitoring. Defibrillation may be unsuccessful without other specific managements (e.g. sodium bicarbonate for tricyclic antidepressant or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  for hydrofluoric acid poisoning). Patients requiring inotrope support may benefit from central venous access and invasive blood pressure monitoring.
3. Urinary catheterisation and nasogastric drainage may be required.
4. Identify agents that may cause seizure activity and be prepared to manage with IV benzodiazepines or phenobarbitone, phenytoin is not indicated in management of poisoning related seizures.
5. Monitor and manage hypoglycaemia in all patients.
6. Hyperthermia should be detected and managed (paralyzing and ventilating a patient may be required to assist with this).
7. Perform a thorough risk assessment identifying all potential agents then (form ingested e.g. slow release etc.) dose, time elapsed since ingestion, circumstances (e.g. geographic location, patients recent movements and behaviour), clinical features and course, patient factors (age, co-morbidities, regular medications, weight). Seek specialist advice from a toxicologist, the Poisons Information Centre phone **13 11 26** will connect you, identify yourself as a treating doctor.
8. The mainstay of treatment will often be supportive, carefully identify potential complications and likely time frames in which they may occur, this will help determine the most appropriate care during transport and disposition of the patient.
9. Many specific antidotes are not routinely stocked by RFDS (due to prohibitive cost and rare use) and may need to be sourced from a regional or tertiary hospital for the transport. (eg. digoxin FAB fragments).
10. Gastrointestinal decontamination (e.g. ipecac, lavage, charcoal, whole bowel irrigation) is rarely used for cases where supportive care or antidote are unlikely to be effective. There are significant risks and little benefits, seek advice regarding the appropriateness in individual cases.
11. Enhanced elimination (charcoal, urinary alkalinisation, dialysis) may be required in some cases, again seek advice.

### References

Murray L, Daly F, Little M, et al. Toxicology Handbook. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Churchill Livingstone. 2011

## 13.5 Paraquat Poisoning

### Theory

1. Paraquat is a chemical herbicide available as a liquid in various concentrations up to 40+%. It also comes in water-soluble granules and as an aerosol (0.44%).
2. Serious poisoning by accidental or suicidal ingestion is nearly always fatal. Poisoning by other routes (e.g. skin absorption, inhalation) rarely causes fatalities.
3. Lethal dose is tiny - less than a mouthful (15mL) of the 20% solution is lethal. Death is due to pulmonary fibrosis (and this is made worse by the administration of oxygen which increases free radicals to attack the lungs) and renal failure. Paraquat is corrosive and can cause upper airway injury.
4. Acute toxicity may be:
  - Mild - patients asymptomatic or develop vomiting and diarrhoea, recovery is usual
  - Moderate - severe (e.g. ingestion of <15mL 20% solution)
  - Vomiting and diarrhoea is followed by renal and hepatic failure and then pulmonary fibrosis
  - Death occurs in the majority but may be delayed for two to three weeks
  - Acute fulminant - nausea, vomiting, extensive ulceration of oropharynx with acute multi-organ failure resulting in death from predominantly cardiogenic shock usually within one to four days.
5. Serum paraquat levels are important prognostically. Urine levels can also be performed.
6. There is no antidote for paraquat poisoning.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Pre-flight assessment should record specific details such as time of ingestion, circumstances of poisoning, name and concentration of formulation, co-ingestants, whether substance was diluted prior to ingestion, amount ingested, timing of vomiting and last meal in relation to ingestion.
2. This is the only circumstance where decontamination takes priority over resuscitation. Patients who have ingested paraquat should receive either Fuller's earth or activated charcoal (50g) orally or even getting them to eat soil. Those who have been exposed should have been thoroughly decontaminated with soap and water, and removal of contaminated clothing.
3. Flights may be Priority 1 or 2 depending on resources available on the ground. Patients already showing symptoms of poisoning should be doctor-accompanied. There are no requirements for sea level pressurisation.
4. Patients should be fully monitored but must not receive supplementary oxygen in flight unless used to relieve dyspnoea in likely fatal cases. Lung transplantation for pulmonary fibrosis is ineffective due to fibrosis occurring in the newly transplanted lungs.
5. Treatment is that of complications (e.g. hypotension, pulmonary oedema, seizures or arrhythmias) and meticulous supportive care.
6. Ice cold fluids are used to relieve pain from oral ulceration - if not possible due to climatic conditions try diluted 1% lignocaine applied topically.
7. Death in-flight is unlikely but possible and should be handled as a Coroner's case, plus incident reporting procedures as usual.

**Note:** Poisoned patients do not excrete paraquat and are therefore not a risk to others, even through close contact within the confines of the aircraft.

### **References**

Ellenhorn M. Medical Toxicology Diagnosis and Treatment of Human Poisoning. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Williams and Wilkins. 1997

Saunders C, Ho M. Current Emergency Diagnosis and Treatment. 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Appleton Lange. 1992.

## 13.6 Serotonin Syndrome

### Theory

1. A drug induced disorder characterised by altered cognitive behaviour, altered autonomic nervous system function and altered neuromuscular activity.
2. Aetiology;
  - Any drug combination that increases serotonin levels at postsynaptic serotonin-1A brain stem receptors (and perhaps serotonin-2 receptors also). Selective serotonin uptake inhibitors (SSRIs) and monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) are the most common combination to cause this syndrome.
  - The syndrome occurs when a dose increase is made to a potent serotonin agonist (MAOI or SSRI) or soon after the addition of a second serotonergic agent. (e.g. lithium, amphetamines, cocaine, levodopa, bromocriptine, pethidine, dextromethorphan and venlafaxine).
  - Note: morphine and fentanyl are considered safe alternative IV analgesics rather than Pethidine but should be used in lower doses. Nonsteroidals, salicylates and paracetamol are safe with serotonin agonists.
3. Signs and Symptoms:
  - Rapid onset, non-specific, most commonly agitation, anxiety, restlessness, sinus tachycardia, mild hypertension, diaphoresis, hyperreflexia, myoclonus, shivering, tremor, diarrhoea and muscular rigidity. Less common symptoms include coma, seizures, VT, hyperthermia, decreased blood pressure, death.
4. Diagnosis is clinical and one of exclusion of other medical and psychiatric conditions. There are no laboratory tests and drug levels if assayed are generally normal.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Treatment is usually symptomatic and supportive if mild. Dramatic improvement generally occurs within 24 hours.
2. Monitor ECG, O<sub>2</sub> saturation. Cease all serotonergic drugs.
3. Monitor for and treat hyperthermia.
4. There are no accepted guidelines for the use of serotonin antagonists, however, benzodiazepines are non-specific serotonin antagonists and can be used to decrease patient discomfort. Other agents that may be useful in moderate to severe cases include cyproheptadine, methysergide and propranolol. Cyproheptadine is the most potent. Dose. 4-8mg orally. Repeat dose 4-6 hourly if needed. Maximum dose 0.5mg/kg/day (32mg/day).
5. Barbiturates, neuromuscular paralysis, intubation and thermal control may be required.

### Special Notes

Neurolept malignant syndrome is a differential diagnosis.

### References

Tintinalli J, Stapczynski S, Cline D, et al. Tintinalli's Emergency Medicine: A Comprehensive Study Guide. 7<sup>th</sup> ed. The American College of Emergency Physicians. McGraw Hill. 2011

Fulde G. Emergency Medicine, The Principles of Practice. 5th ed. Australia: Saunders. 2009.

Dunn R, Dille S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.

## 13.7 Cyanide Poisoning

### Theory

1. Cyanide is widely used in the mining industry however acute exposure is often rapidly lethal with patients dying before reaching care.
2. Cyanide act by inhibiting oxidative metabolism resulting in lactic acidosis, pulmonary and coronary vasoconstriction and neurotransmitter release causing seizures. Loss of consciousness occurs in seconds with gas inhalation or 30-60 minutes with salt ingestion. Multiple systems are effected and symptoms may progress from nausea and vomiting to headache dyspnoea, cardiovascular collapse and agitation, seizures and coma.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Resuscitation and supportive care with immediate intubation and ventilation with 100% oxygen is indicated in severe poisoning.
2. A priority 1 doctor accompanied flight should be tasked however be mindful of the likelihood of standing a crew down given the rapid fatality of this poison.
3. Ensure the patient has been removed from the source and thoroughly decontaminated (washed with soap and water), clothing should be removed, placed in a sealed bag and not transported. **DO NOT TRANSPORT PATIENT WITHOUT DECONTAMINATION AS THIS POSES A RISK TO CREW.**
4. Activated charcoal is contraindicated if the airway is not secured by endotracheal tube.
5. Antidotes include;
  - Hydroxocobalamin (Vitamin B12a), the doses required as an antidote are massive and the drug is not widely available if at all. The dose is 5g in 200mL 5% dextrose over 30 min (the usual preparation available for pernicious anaemia is 1mg/mL so 5000 ampoules would be required) check with your regional hospital whether they carry this, this is generally followed by
  - Sodium thiosulphate 12.5g IV over 10min, if no improvement in 15 min both drugs are repeated.
  - Dicobalt edetate (Kelocyanor) is often mentioned as an antidote but has severe toxic side effects when administered to a patient without cyanide poisoning. 300mg is given IV over 1 minute, immediately followed by 50mL of 50% dextrose IV. Repeat if necessary. The diagnosis must be 100% certain and symptoms of poisoning severe. Should be followed by Sodium thiosulphate as above.
  - Some mine sites may carry kits containing amyl nitrate capsules (0.3mL each), crushed and inhaled 1 minutely until IV sodium nitrite (10mL of 3% solution (300mg) given over 2-3 min) followed by sodium thiosulphate as above. The value of amyl nitrite has been questioned but a lack of alternatives mean that it is still carried.

### References

Murray L, Daly F, Little M, et al. Toxicology Handbook. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Churchill Livingstone. 2011.

Dunn R, Dille S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010

## 14 TRAUMA

### 14.1 Burns

#### Theory

1. Burns may be either:
  - Superficial (involving the epithelium) – pink, red and painful.
  - Partial thickness (epithelium and part of the dermis) – mottled pink, painful, with hairs intact, red, blistered or oedematous.
  - Full thickness (through the skin to the underlying structures) – may be black or white and leathery, painless, no hairs, may have thrombosed blood vessels.
2. Partial and full thickness burns lose copious amounts of fluid and electrolytes, especially in the first few hours, which can result in hypovolemic shock.
3. Associated conditions may include carbon monoxide poisoning, cyanide poisoning (from burning plastics), smoke inhalation, trauma from explosions and falling debris, etc.
4. Calculation of area involved by the burn. NB. erythema alone is not included:
  - a) Adults, older children - “Rule of Nines”:
    - 9% for head, each upper limb
    - 18% for anterior trunk, posterior trunk, each lower limb
    - 1% for perineum
  - b) Infants, small children – Lund-Browder Chart:
    - Figures below are for 1 year olds. For each additional year, subtract 1% from the head and add to lower extremes:
      - i. 19% head
      - ii. 12.5% each lower limb
      - iii. other percentages as above
5. Burns greater than 25% result in a widespread systemic response and generalised oedema including pulmonary and airway even if no direct respiratory injury.



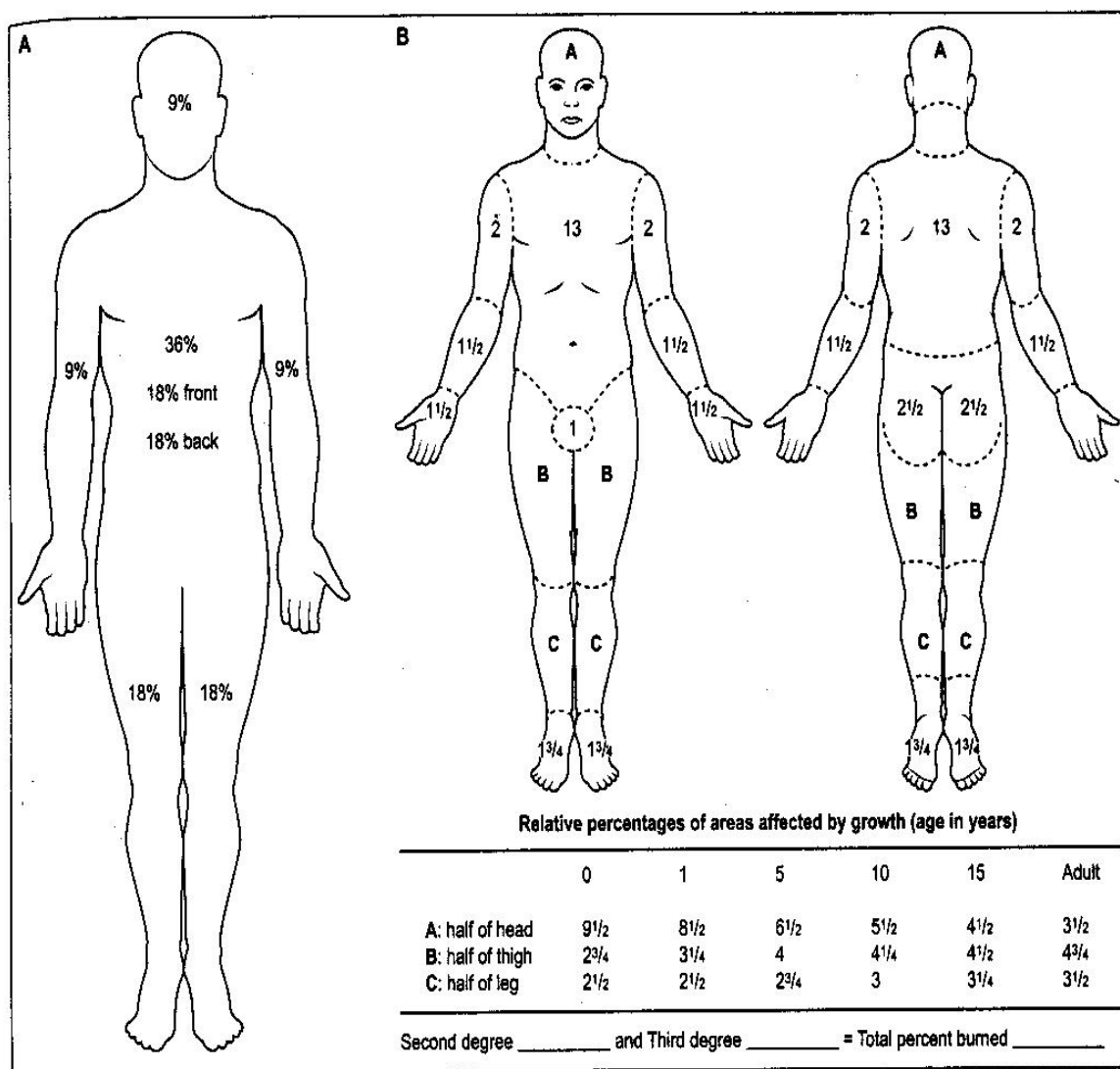


Figure 25. Relative percentages of areas affected by growth (age in years)

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Pre-flight management and advice will be directed at removing the offending agent, the ABC's, cooling the burns (ensure 20 min of cooling with running water if possible) and establishing IV access and commencing fluid replacement. The patient should be covered to prevent heat loss. Remember coexisting injuries / illnesses.
2. Flights may be Priority 1 or 2 and may be doctor accompanied depending on the age of the patient, the extent of the burns and the medical facilities available locally.
3. Attempt to get as much information as possible about mechanism of injury.
4. Dressings:  
For transport, all burns should be dressed with Acticoat or SSD cream (not to the face), gauze, sheets or non-stick dressings and crepe bandages. Wet dressings and clingfilm slide off predisposing the patient to infection and hypothermia. Do not apply clingfilm in a circumferential fashion.
5. A cache of Acticoat dressings sufficient to manage up to 80% BSA in an adult, or less in multiple patients is available at each base and should be taken to dress extensive burns if not available at referring location.
6. Remove all clothing and jewellery.

7. Facial burns should be dressed with vaseline or sterile emollient, with chloromycetin ointment to the eyes and eyelids.
8. Fluid management (Parkland formula);
  - 2-4 mL/kg/%SA of burn in addition to maintenance fluids.
  - Give ½ in first 8 hours from time of burn. Give remainder over 16 hours.
  - Give all as crystalloid or half-crystalloid (Hartman's) and half colloid (Haemaccel). For additional maintenance fluids in children use 2.5% dextrose, ½ normal saline with added 25mL 50% dextrose to each 500mL bag. Monitor BSL regularly especially in children.
9. Aim to maintain urine output >0.5mL/kg/hr (>1mL/kg/hr in children). Monitor for haemo / myoglobinuria fluids may need to be increased to push urine output to 2mL/kg/hr. Mannitol diuresis may be required.
10. Non invasive blood pressure measurements may be inaccurate, arterial lines are useful for large burns.
11. Monitoring pH and lactate may be useful measures of adequacy of tissue perfusion / resuscitation.
12. All patients with major burns should have an IDC inserted and NGT (gastroparesis is common).
13. Analgesia: Burns are very painful and administration of sufficient analgesia may necessitate intubation to protect the airway. IV morphine should be titrated or given by infusion pump.
14. Management of airway burns:
  - Suspect if there are substantial facial burns, oral erythema or blistering, carbonaceous sputum, hoarse voice or stridor.
  - Management includes early intubation before oedema makes this impossible. Suxamethonium can be used in a rapid sequence induction provided burns are < 5 days old.
15. Escharotomy: must be performed if circumferential burns are preventing adequate perfusion of the extremities (watch neurovasc obs, deep pain at rest or on passive movement of distal joints), or are impairing respiration. The eschar is split longitudinally with a scalpel, down to bleeding tissue. No analgesia / anaesthesia is required. Advice should be sought from burns consultant at the time to avoid unnecessary injury to peripheral nerves etc.
16. Elevate all involved limbs.
17. Persistent hypotension, myocardial ischaemia or arrhythmias;
18. Suspect and treat for carbon monoxide and cyanide poisoning.
19. All burns patients require tetanus prophylaxis.
20. Admission to a hospital with a specialist burns facility is recommended for;
  - burns > 10% BSA,
  - circumferential partial thickness or full thickness burns,
  - chemical or electrical burns or
  - burns to special areas i.e. face, neck, hands, feet, perineum, joints or inhalational burns.

## ***References***

Dunn R, Dilley S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.

Barnden L. Assessment and treatment form for adult burn victims. Royal Perth Hospital, 1995.

Personal communication, CNS Joy Fong, Burns Unit, Royal Perth Hospital, 2000

Australian & New Zealand Burn Association. Emergency Management of Severe Burns Course Manual. 15<sup>th</sup> Ed February 2011.

## 14.2 Hydrofluoric Acid Burns

### *Theory*

1. Hydrofluoric acid (HF) is a strong inorganic acid often used to clean metal and in glass etching.
2. On contact with skin HF is absorbed systemically where it rapidly binds with calcium to form an insoluble precipitate. It lowers the plasma calcium level and can cause demineralisation of bone. It causes deep necrotic burns to skin and soft tissues.
3. Fatalities from systemic poisoning have occurred with as little as 2.5% body surface area exposure. Death is due to myocardial depression and arrhythmias secondary to intractable hypocalcaemia.

### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

1. Pre-flight management advice should include copious lavage with water and the application of calcium gluconate gel topically. This will also provide pain relief.
2. Flights will usually be Priority 2. Where the burns are more than very minor, the flight should be doctor accompanied.
3. All patients should receive cardiac monitoring.
4. Continuing symptoms despite topical calcium gluconate indicates systemic absorption and further treatment should be commenced. This includes injection of 10% calcium gluconate subcut. with a 26G needle.
5. Severe or extensive burns require intra-arterial calcium gluconate titrated against the pain (via arterial lines to affected areas). Infuse 10mL calcium gluconate diluted with 40mL N/S into arterial line over 4/24. Follow with heparin flush. These patients require intensive care management.
6. Monitor serum calcium level with I-STAT analyser and give IV calcium gluconate as required. Amputation of a limb may be necessary to save life when hypocalcaemia is intractable.

### *References*

Dreisbach R, True B. Dreisbach's Handbook of Poisoning : Prevention, Diagnosis and Treatment. 13<sup>th</sup> ed. Parthenon Publishing. 2001.

Saunders C and Ho M, Current Emergency Diagnosis and Treatment. Appleton Lange. 4<sup>th</sup> Ed. 1992.

Ellenhorn M. Medical Toxicology Diagnosis and Treatment of Human Poisoning. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Williams and Wilkins. 1997.

## 14.3 Identification and Management of Pelvic Fractures

### Theory

The sacrum, ilium, ischium and pubis, along with a large number of ligamentous complexes, comprise the pelvis. Fractures and ligamentous disruptions of the pelvis suggest that major forces were applied to the patient, e.g. Ejection from a motor vehicle, crushing injury, pedestrian struck by moving vehicle or motorcycle collision. Pelvic fractures have a significant association with injuries to intra and retroperitoneal visceral and vascular structures. Therefore, hypotension may or may not be related to the pelvic fracture itself when blunt trauma is the mechanism for injury. Blood loss in a pelvic fracture is from the ends of the fractured bones, associated injuries to pelvic muscles, presacral veins and pelvic arteries

### Pre-flight and In-flight management

1. These patients would usually be Priority 1 or 2 depending on the referring location and amount of pre transfer stabilisation. If there multiple injuries or the patient is unstable then the flight is likely to be doctor accompanied.
2. After checking airway, breathing and circulation ensure adequate IV access and fluid resuscitation, add supplemental oxygen.
3. Examination:
  - Inspect the pelvic area for ecchymosis, perineal or scrotal haematoma, or blood at the urethral meatus.
  - Inspect for leg-length discrepancy or rotational deformity.
  - If circumstances permit, in a male perform a rectal examination, as a high riding prostate gland is a sign of a significant pelvic fracture, note any palpable fracture, or the presence of gross or occult blood in the stool.
  - In a woman perform a vaginal examination, noting palpable fractures, the size and consistency of the uterus, or the presence of blood. Remember that women of childbearing age may be pregnant.
  - Palpate the bony pelvis to identify painful areas.
  - Determine pelvic stability by gently applying anterior-posterior compression and lateral-to-medial compression over the anterosuperior iliac crests. Testing for axial mobility by gently pushing and pulling on the legs will determine stability in a cranial-caudal direction. This should only be **performed once**, if at all, as repeated testing for instability may dislodge clots from coagulated vessels and result in fatal haemorrhage.
4. Cautiously insert a urinary catheter if no blood is seen at the urethral meatus, otherwise a retrograde urethrogram will be needed.
5. Interpret the pelvic x-ray, giving special consideration to those fractures that are frequently associated with significant blood loss, eg, fractures that increase the pelvic volume.
6. Systematically evaluate the film for:
  - Width of the symphysis pubis - greater than 1 cm separation signifies significant posterior pelvic injury.
  - The integrity of the superior and inferior pubic rami bilaterally.
  - The integrity of the acetabula, as well as femoral heads and necks.
  - Symmetry of the ilium and width of the sacroiliac joints.
  - Symmetry of the sacral foramina by evaluating the arcuate lines.

- Fracture(s) of the transverse processes of L-5.
  - The pelvis is a ring that rarely sustains an injury in only one location. Displacement of ringed structures implies two fracture sites.
  - Remember, fractures that increase the pelvic volume, e.g. vertical shear and open-book fractures, are often associated with massive blood loss.
7. Techniques to Reduce Blood Loss from Pelvic Fractures.
- Avoid excessive and repeated manipulation of the pelvis.
  - Internally rotate the lower legs to close an open-book type fracture. Pad bony prominences and tie the rotated legs together. These manoeuvres may reduce a displaced symphysis, decrease the pelvic volume, and be used as temporary measures until definitive treatment can be provided.
  - Apply pelvic splint such as T-pod device or a windlass fashioned from a bed sheet.
  - Obtain early surgical and orthopaedic consultation to determine priorities. (Royal Perth Hospital Trauma line 1800-631-798)

## **References**

American College of Surgeons. Advanced Trauma Life Support. Student Manual. 8<sup>th</sup> ed. 2008

## 14.4 Crush Syndrome

### Definition

The systemic manifestations of muscle ischaemia secondary to compartment syndrome.

### Theory

1. First described in civilians buried under debris from collapsed buildings during the London Blitz in World War II. Other causes include earthquakes, mining accidents and prolonged unconsciousness (e.g. drug overdose) where the patient's limbs are compressed by his own body weight. The diagnoses should be suspected in these circumstances.
2. The clinical presentation includes the following:
  - Signs of compartment syndrome: swollen, tense muscle compartments; pain in conscious patients, especially on passive stretching of affected muscles.
  - Pressure marks, including clothing patterns.
  - Reduced perfusion to peripheries. N.B. Peripheral pulses disappear late.
  - Cardiovascular: hypertension, tachycardia, arrhythmias secondary to hyperkalaemia.
  - Metabolic: metabolic acidosis, hyperkalaemia, and acute renal failure secondary to myoglobinuria, DIC.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. These would usually be Priority 1 or 2 and Doctor-accompanied, depending on the facilities at the referring location.
2. There should be a low threshold for suspecting the diagnosis and treating early. Hyperkalaemia and metabolic acidosis can be confirmed using i-STAT. Urine may be discoloured dark red-brown from myoglobin, with dipstick positive for blood.
3. Good IV access with preferably two 16g cannulae, urinary catheterization, supplemental oxygen and splinting of any associated fractures should also be ensured.
4. Maintenance of high urinary output (>2 mL/kg/hr) with IV fluids (usually 1 litre/hr for first 4 hours) and IV mannitol, + dopamine infusion, unless anuric.
5. Urinary alkalinisation with sodium bicarbonate 1mmol/kg.
6. Correct hyperkalaemia with 50% dextrose 25mL and actrapid insulin 5 units IV.
7. Transport early for definitive care, which includes haemodialysis, fasciotomy and debridement of dead muscle, and ICU management.

### References

Dunn R, Dille S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.

## 14.5 Compartment Syndrome

### Definition

Compartment syndrome refers to a condition in which increased pressure in a limited space compromises circulation and function.

### Theory

There are a number of common scenarios that may lead to a compartment syndrome occurring: Fractures, soft tissue injuries, prolonged limb compression, burns, and reperfusion of ischaemic tissues. For our purposes the most common would be fractures involving mid-tibia and forearm.

The pathophysiology is thought to be as a result of haemorrhage or oedema from the original injury raising pressure in the compartment, arterial inflow continues however venous and lymphatic outflow ceases due to compression. Microcirculation is compromised and tissue ischaemia results in tissue necrosis. The end result can be quite catastrophic with loss of limb function or amputation. This is a surgical emergency for which the definitive treatment is fasciotomy.

It is possible to measure compartment pressures in high risk patients and institute measures to reduce risk and compartment pressure.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Prevention:
  - Elevate limb to heart height
  - Split plasters or use back slabs
  - Avoid circumferential bandages
  - For lower leg injuries ensure ankle in a neutral position
2. Clinical Diagnosis:
  - Pain out of proportion to injury
  - Palpable tenseness
  - Pain on passive stretch
  - Pallor
  - Paraesthesia
  - Paresis
  - Pulses not lost until extremely late not a useful sign
3. Pressure measurement:
  - Where clinical signs equivocal or patient not conscious
  - 4 hourly measurements in at risk patients
  - Absolute pressure >30mmHg or
  - Perfusion pressure (DBP-Compartment pressure) < 30mmHg
4. The same pressure transducer that we carry for arterial lines can be used to measure compartment pressures.
  - Using aseptic technique and a scalpel cut a small port 1cm from the sharp end of a 16G IV cannula (trocar still in situ).
  - Prime cannula with normal saline prior insertion.



- Insert cannula within 5cm radius of fracture site, at 90° to the skin and depth of 2 cm. (Consider local anaesthetic for skin)
- Remove trocar and attach primed transducer set
- Zero transducer at level of limb.

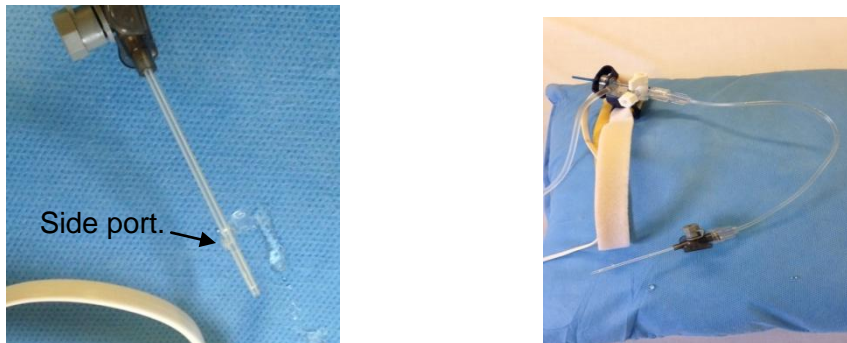


Figure 26. IV cannula modified with side-port to monitor compartment pressures with artline transducer.

## 5. Treatment

Surgical emergency, however given our transport times in-flight action may be required, diversion to regional surgeon or medical therapy. There is some limited evidence that it is possible to temporarily reduce compartment pressures whilst in transit by using mannitol 20% 50g IV (may be repeated but no more than 200g in 24hrs), monitor response, fluid balance. Contra-indicated in acute renal failure.

## References

Wall, C., Richardson, M., Destiger, K., et al. Compartment Syndrome Guideline. Trauma Service Guidelines. The Royal Melbourne Hospital Ver 2.0 July 2012.

Reis, N.D., Better, O.S. Mechanical muscle-crush injury and acute muscle-crush compartment syndrome. The Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery (Br) 2005; 87-B:450-3.

Wilson, S.C., Vrahas, M.S., Berson, L., et al. A Simple Method to Measure Compartment Pressures Using an Intravenous Catheter. Orthopaedics; May 1997; 20,5: 403-406.

Better, O.S., Zinman, C., Reis, N.D., et al. Hypertonic mannitol ameliorates intracompartmental tamponade in model compartment syndrome in the dog. Nephron 1991; 58:344-6.

## 14.6 Fractured Neck of Femur

### *Theory*

1. Orthopaedic surgeons in Western Australia have indicated their desire to be able to have a patient with a fractured neck of femur on the operating table within four hours of the injury occurring, to maximise the success rate of maintaining the viability of the head of the femur.
2. In the real world obviously, this ideal is not always attainable, especially considering the long distances involved, and also the fact that often we are not notified by the referring location until well after this four hour period has passed.

### *Pre-flight Management*

1. Check time of injury – if the fracture has occurred recently and it is feasible for us to retrieve the patient within four hours then it should be assessed as a priority 2 flight.
  - We still will not be able to get the patient to the operating table in four hours but this will minimise the delay – clinically it is not justified to make it a priority 1 flight based on an uncomplicated isolated fracture alone.
2. Check IV access – desirable to be able to use IV boluses without risk of needle-stick injury in flight and analgesia will be far more effective if titrated to patients needs. The patient should be fasting with appropriate maintenance fluids IV running.
3. Sometimes a femoral nerve block can effectively augment IV analgesia – it is worth asking if the referring doctor would consider performing a femoral nerve block prior to our retrieval.
4. Indwelling catheter – is recommended due to restricted mobility with this injury.
5. Splinting – ensure buddy splinting to the opposite leg. **NB:** Traction splints are not effective for fractured neck of femur – as the ring at the top sits directly under the fracture site. A vacuum mattress is an effective form of immobilisation during transfer.
6. Check that the neurovascular status of the leg distally is not compromised.

### *In-flight management*

1. Routine monitoring with Propaq monitor.
2. Supplemental oxygen via Hudson's mask as required.
3. IV analgesia titrated to patient needs – usually morphine or fentanyl boluses IV prn.
4. Antiemesis may need to be considered.

## 14.7 Screening Adults With Suspected Cervical Spine Fractures

### Theory

1. The presence of paraplegia or quadriplegia is presumptive evidence of spinal instability.
2. Assessment of the patient depends on their conscious state, neurological status and the presence or absence of midline tenderness.
3. Cervical spine injury is highly unlikely in patients with blunt trauma if the following 5 criteria are met:
  - A normal level of alertness,
  - No evidence of intoxication,
  - Absence of a focal neurological deficit,
  - Absence of tenderness at the posterior midline of the cervical spine and
  - The absence of clinically apparent pain that might distract the patient from the pain of a cervical spine injury.
4. Patients who fit the above criteria can be safely transferred without cervical immobilisation. All other patients should be transferred with the spine immobilised with a stiff neck collar until full radiographic assessment can be made.
5. Spinal immobilisation comprises the following:
  - Patient in a neutral position, for small children with large occiputs this may require support under the shoulders. Laying on vacuum mattress to ensure pressure area care.
  - Correctly applied rigid collar, either "Stiffneck" or "Aspen".
  - Head immobilisation with Ferno head immobiliser or sandbags or IV fluid bags.
  - Head taped if necessary in addition.
  - Patient should be well enough secured and caccooned in vac mat to enable rolling with only two persons should the patient vomit.
  - A scoop stretcher or spinal board is only used to move the patient from one surface to another, patients must be removed from these as soon as possible to prevent pressure areas.
6. Patients with a high index of cervical spine injury and requiring full immobilisation may require a second pair of hands in flight either second flight nurse or doctor accompanied.
7. Cervical spine radiographs should be assessed for
  - bony deformity
  - fracture of the vertebral body or processes
  - loss of alignment of the posterior aspect of the vertebral bodies (anterior extent of the vertebral canal),
  - increased distances between the spinous processes at one level,
  - narrowing of the vertebral canal, and
  - increased pre-vertebral soft-tissue space (>5 mm opposite C3).

### References

American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma, *Advanced Trauma Life Support for Doctors: Student Course Manual*, 6<sup>th</sup> Ed, American College of Surgeons Chicago, 1997.

Hoffman J, Mower W, Wolfson A, et al. Validity of a set of clinical criteria to rule out injury to the cervical spine in patients with blunt trauma. *NEJM* 2000 Jul 13;343(2):94-9.

## 14.8 Acute Spinal Cord Injuries

### Theory

1. The commonest presentation of acute spinal cord injury (SCI) (in the conscious patient) is neck or back pain with flaccid paralysis below the level of injury. The damage occurs at the time of injury. There is little that can be done to impact on this other than health promotion campaigns focussing on prevention and legislation to reduce the injury impact e.g. use of seatbelts.
2. It is the secondary damage that occurs in the subsequent hours following initial injury that has been the focus of much research within the SCI field over the last few years. The secondary damage occurs following a complex biomechanical cascade of events, resulting ultimately in a process called lipid peroxidation, with subsequent further neurological deterioration. Additionally, the inflammatory process will result in oedema to the spinal cord, which has the ability to ascend the neurological deficit. The emphasis of research has therefore been to attempt to influence various points within this cascade and so positively affect outcomes for the patient.
3. The aim of treatment is to reduce or minimise cord oedema and prevent further cord damage.
  - A cord lesion is presumptive evidence of spinal fracture/dislocation which is unstable. All patients should be transferred with full spinal precautions immobilizing the entire spine.
  - Secondary cord damage can be minimised by ensuring adequate oxygenation, adequate spinal cord perfusion (adequate blood pressure). The administration of methylprednisolone is no longer practiced routinely.
  - Neural tissue can be further damaged by high blood sugar levels so it is important to control this and avoid dextrose containing IV fluids
4. Methylprednisolone is no longer regularly used in acute spinal injuries. Evidence is poor, it may be associated with more harm than good. It should not be given without consultant level neurosurgical advice. The speculated mechanisms of the drug has are:
  - a) Suppresses the vigorous inflammatory responses at the site of injury, which may worsen its impact; and
  - b) Block the formation of free radicals. These charged, highly energetic ions can disrupt the membranes of cells (i.e. lipid peroxidation).

If used, it must be given in the first 8 hours after injury.

### Pre-flight Management

1. Most flights will be Priority 2 and may not require a doctor. A doctor should accompany the flight if the cord lesion is high (and increasing oedema may affect innervation of respiratory muscles), if there are associated injuries requiring a doctor or patient is shocked. Pilots should be requested to avoid turbulence.
2. Pre-flight advice should include the immobilization of the entire spine, best done by placing the patient in a correctly applied Stifneck or Aspen rigid cervical collar and placed on a vacuum mattress with universal head immobilizer. Patients should be removed from rigid extrication devices such as spinal boards and scoop stretchers as soon as possible. Patients should receive adequate analgesia and/or sedation to allow them to lie still. Antiemetics, NGT and IDC are strongly recommended. Prophylaxis against gastric stress ulceration is also recommended. All patients should be transferred to Royal Perth Hospital.

3. Spinal shock occurs in cervical cord lesions where there is unopposed vagal response causing hypotension and bradycardia. It is important to distinguish from hypotension due to haemorrhagic shock, which usually causes peripheral shutdown and tachycardia. Spinal shock often does not respond to fluids and excess fluids can precipitate pulmonary oedema. If patients are very hypotensive they may require inotropes.
4. All patients should receive oxygen.
5. Methylprednisolone is not routinely administered, if there is any doubt consult Spinal Unit consultant urgently. If used, it is administered as a bolus dose of 30mg/kg IV over 15 minutes, followed by 5.4mg/kg IV over 23 hours. (See drug infusion guidelines for details). It is contraindicated in open cord injuries.
6. Full spinal precautions should be maintained throughout all transfers.
7. Protect the skin – pressure relief and protection of bony prominences are important from the outset during transfer.
8. Check blood sugar levels four hourly if administering steroids – consult Spinal Unit consultant if elevated.

## References

American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma, *Advanced Trauma Life Support for Doctors: Student Course Manual*, 6<sup>th</sup> Ed, American College of Surgeons Chicago, 1997.

Bracken MB. Pharmacological Interventions for Acute Spinal Cord Injury (Cochrane Review). In: the Cochrane Library, Issue 1, 2001. Oxford.

See also RFDS Western Operations Clinical Manual 13.6 Guidelines for Screening Adult Patients with Suspected Cervical Spine Injury.

## 14.9 Head Injury

### Theory

The aims of patient management in severe head injury are to identify and treat life-threatening injuries and prevent secondary brain injury. Most morbidity results from delay in diagnosis and treatment of an intracranial haematoma or from failure to correct hypoxia and hypotension. A single episode of SBP below 90mmHg is associated with a doubling of mortality. Early referral to a neurosurgical team improves outcome.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Pre-flight information and advice is directed at airway management (with cervical spine control), oxygenation and correction of hypotension. Flights will usually be Priority 1 or 2, depending on facilities at the referring location and the severity of the injury. Any patient who may require intubation or other intervention must be doctor-accompanied.
2. Patients with open head injuries or pneumocephalus require sea level pressurisation. Whether sea level pressurisation is also required for patients with a fractured base of skull is controversial. Closed head injuries do not require pressurisation to sea level.
3. Assessment and resuscitation priorities are as per EMST guidelines. Difficulties with intubation should be anticipated early as manual in-line cervical spine stabilisation will be necessary. There may be significant facial injuries, foreign bodies in the airway and distortion of airway structures at laryngoscopy.
4. Intubation is indicated to protect the airway from aspiration, correct hypoxia, ensure normocapnoea, and to control the combative patient to facilitate CT scanning or transport. Patients with a GCS  $\leq 8$  have been shown to benefit from early intubation, but the above criteria may include patients with GCS 8 – 13 as well.
5. The induction agent chosen must not contribute to hypotension, Ketamine is a reasonable choice for haemodynamic stability, there is no evidence to suggest it or suxamethonium use results in raised intra-cranial pressure.
6. Deteriorating conscious state, development of focal neurological signs, papilloedema or Cushing's reflex (hypertension and bradycardia) are evidence of raised intracranial pressure and may be treated with:
  - a) intubation and ventilation to low to normal PaCO<sub>2</sub> (35-40mmHg).
  - b) 30° head elevation (ensure also the internal jugular vein has not been kinked by turning the head)
  - c) Loosen cervical collar and replace ETT ties with adhesive tape
  - d) Hypertonic saline (HTS) 3% 3mL/kg over 10-20 min has replaced previous recommendation for mannitol. (Discuss with neurosurgeon first)(See following instruction regarding make up of 3% saline from 20% saline)
  - e) steroids are not useful in the management of acute head injury.
  - f) Ensure patient well sedated and paralysed
7. Hypotension must corrected to maintain cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP). The MAP should be positioned to allow maintenance of CPP, ie. A MAP of 70-90mmHg or a SBP of not below 90mmHg.
8. Ensure adequate monitoring through invasive arterial blood pressure, oxygen saturation and cardiac monitors, use of ETCO<sub>2</sub> analyser, frequent ABG and blood glucose estimations, and hourly urine measure.
9. Maintain normoglycaemia.

10. Patients with open head injuries require antibiotic prophylaxis. Flucloxacillin 1G IV 6 hourly is recommended.
11. Anticonvulsant prophylaxis may be indicated in severe neurotrauma. Give phenytoin 15-18mg/kg IV over 30-60 minutes.

**Hypertonic saline solution**

20% saline is available at the base in 10mL ampoules.

**First:** Remove 56 mL from a 500mL bag of 0.9% Saline to make 444mL

**Then:** Add 56mL of 20% saline to bag.

- This solution is now 3% saline. (257mmol in 500mL)
- This procedure must be checked by another person.

**References**

Cameron P, Jelinek G, Kelly A, et al. Textbook of Adult Emergency Medicine. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. Churchill Livingstone. 2009.

Allman K, Wilson I. Oxford handbook of anaesthesia. Oxford University Press. 2007.

Brain Trauma Foundation (2007), 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. Guidelines for the management of severe traumatic brain injury. New York.

Kamel, H., Babak, B.N., Nakagawa, K., et al. Hypertonic saline versus mannitol for the treatment of elevated intracranial pressure: A meta-analysis of randomised clinical trials. Critical Care Medicine; 39:554-559.

## 15 EMERGENCY ANAESTHESIA AND VENTILATION

### 15.1 Indications for Intubation

#### *Theory*

1. One should always have a clear rationale behind a decision to intubate a patient and be aware that it is not a risk free procedure for the patient.
2. In the transport setting an elective intubation in a controlled environment before moving the patient is much safer than attempting to intubate in the uncontrolled environment of an aircraft or ambulance. Good judgement and an understanding of the likely course of the patients illness is required to avoid the dangers of an unplanned intubation.
3. Indications for emergency anaesthesia and intubation include;
  - a. Airway compromise, actual or anticipated
  - b. Respiratory failure eg. flail chest, pneumonia, asthma
  - c. Inability to protect airway due to depressed conscious level eg. head injury or poisoning
  - d. Severe cardiovascular instability eg. septic or cardiogenic shock
  - e. Last line management of behavioural disturbance
  - f. Humanitarian reasons
  - g. Facilitate controlled ventilation when managing raised intra-cranial pressure
  - h. Predicted clinical need likely to arise in course of transport
  - i. Facilitation of surgical or other procedure

Emergency anaesthesia is often conducted by infrequent intubators, safe practice relies on regular training or rehearsal, team work and a disciplined approach.



## 15.2 Conduct of Rapid Sequence Induction

### Theory

Rapid sequence induction is intended to achieve a definitive airway rapidly so as to minimise risk of airway soiling and achieve rapid control of ventilation. The intent is to create the best intubating conditions possible.

Conduct of RSI requires a disciplined team approach with careful planning, role delineation and consideration of patient factors such as anatomy and pathology. (See [Modification of RSI for special circumstances](#)) Planning should factor into consideration difficult or failed intubation with a clearly articulated plan.

#### Patient assessment

The patient must be assessed as best possible for predictors of difficult intubation whilst remaining cognisant of the fact that many difficult intubations have no obvious predictors. All emergency intubations should be considered potentially difficult. A number of anatomical measures have been helpful in predicting difficulty, these may be summarised in the mnemonic LEMON.

- L** Look for anatomical indicators of difficult intubation; large tongue, protruding teeth, beard / moustache, large breasts
- E** Evaluate 3-3-2; measure mouth opening 3 fingers width, hyoid-mental distance 3 fingers width, thyro-hyoid distance 2 fingers width. Variations on these distances may predict difficulty.
- M** Mallampatti, in practice this may not be possible in the emergency setting as evaluation involves a cooperative seated upright patient.
- O** Obstruction, look for evidence of airway obstruction, injury (facial or soft tissue neck), masses, swelling, foreign bodies, scarring, stridor, dysphonia.
- N** Neck mobility, c-spine precautions, rheumatological conditions (RA, Ankylosing spondylitis, surgical fusion), previous radiotherapy.

#### Preparation – equipment

- The retrieval team should not be reliant on referring services to provide and maintain the equipment that may be needed for intubation.
- All members of the retrieval team are expected to be intimately familiar with the equipment carried, lack of familiarity with this gear is inexcusable and may result in a poor patient outcome.
- Set up of equipment should follow a standardised layout to assist in quickly finding the appropriate device when needed and to ensure nothing is missing. This equipment set-up is sometimes called a kit-dump.
- RFDS air way equipment is listed in this manual under Part 5 Standard Aircraft Minimum Equipment List; Airway and Breathing.
- A challenge and response check-list should include all the equipment required for intubation and failed intubation drill. Equipment should be checked and working.
- This preparation should include readiness for post-intubation; confirmation of tube position (ETCO<sub>2</sub> warmed up and ready to use), ventilator and circuit set up and ready to connect).

#### Preparation – patient

- Patient preparation includes positioning, pre-oxygenation, ensuring adequate monitoring and lines in place. Consideration should also be given to access to the patient, ideally 360 degree access.

- The optimal position for intubation is one in which the patient's external auditory meatus is aligned with the sternal notch. This is also known as the ramped position, in obese patients this may require a number of pillows and towels positioned under shoulders and neck.

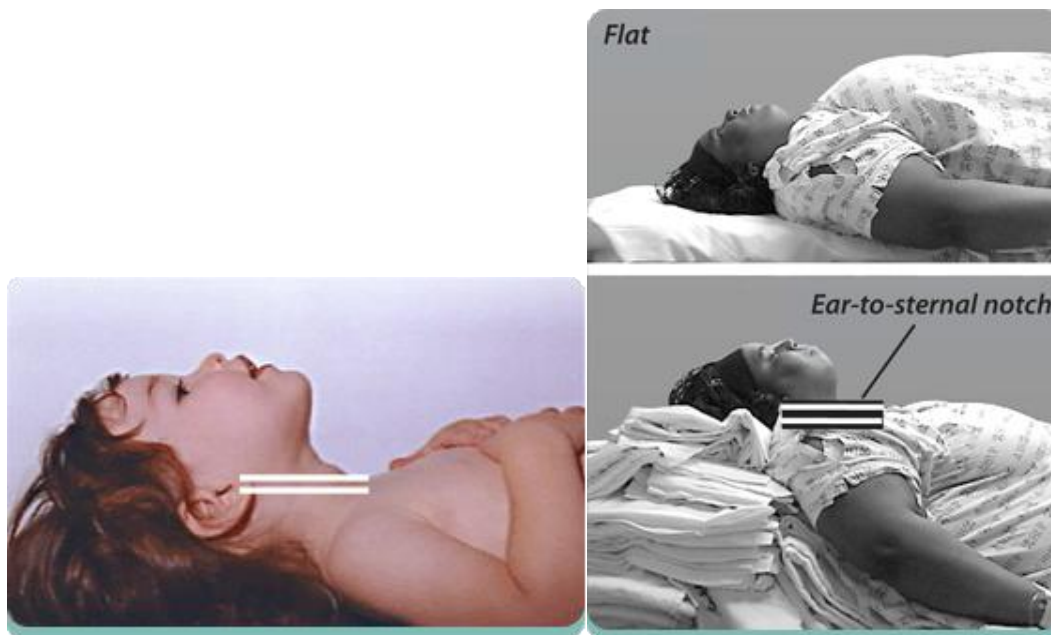


Figure 27. Optimal intubation position

- If cervical spine injury is suspected the ramped position is not possible, a person must be allocated the role of manual in-line stabilisation of the neck. This will allow the collar to be removed for intubation but still makes for a more difficult intubation than would otherwise be the case.
- The goal of pre-oxygenation is to maximise oxygenation and flush out nitrogen from the lungs and ensure a greater reservoir of oxygen available for gas exchange whilst apnoeic. Pre-oxygenation is generally achieved by spontaneous breathing high flow oxygen via a face mask, usually for a minimum of three minutes.
- Be aware that for effective pre-oxygenation with a bag-valve-mask apparatus a patient must be able to generate sufficient negative pressure to open the valve, for many patients this may be difficult and a non-rebreather mask will be better.
- A patient with ineffective breathing may need to be assisted to achieve adequate pre-oxygenation with assisted breaths applied via B-V-M with PEEP valve (with cricoids pressure in place) or via Non-Invasive Ventilation.
- In addition to pre-oxygenation the practice of applying high flow oxygen via nasal prongs to the apnoeic patient may buy further time for intubation prior to desaturation. As oxygen is absorbed in the alveoli a slight negative pressure evolves and draws gas down from the pharynx, applying a high FiO<sub>2</sub> via nasal prongs ensures an ongoing supply of O<sub>2</sub> to the alveoli.

### Preparation – personnel

- All personnel should be assigned specific roles and confirmation that they understand these roles be sought.
- Roles may include, depending on numbers available:
  - Intubator; Makes plan, executes intubation / airway procedures, maintains situational awareness. Runs check list with airway assistant.

- Airway assistant ; Runs check list with intubator, passes equipment and anticipates next step according to plan, monitors time and patient.
- Drug administration; Very explicit instructions must be given explaining what is in syringe, what volume is to be given (mark the syringe if necessary), ensure line free flowing and drugs do not flow back up into bag. Instruct regarding order of administration, speed and flushing.
- Cricoid pressure; May not be used, often obscures airway, of doubtful benefit, if used have low threshold for removal when difficulties occur. Ensure operator knows how to perform, when to apply and when to release.
- MILS (Manual In-Line Stabilisation); ensure operator knows how to perform and is positioned such that will not interfere with access to airway, may be preferable with a caudal position.
- Scribe
- Runner

### **Preparation – drugs**

- Ensure appropriate drug choices based on patient's pathology. (See [Anaesthetic drugs](#))
- Calculate and check doses and have drawn up and labelled.
- Have induction agent, paralytic and ongoing maintenance drugs drawn up
- Draw up and label rescue drugs eg. a vasopressor, atropine.

Table 14. Challenge and Response Checklist

| RFDS Emergency Anaesthesia Checklist |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| ✓                                    | PLAN   |
|                                      | Rapid sequence induction (RSI) indicated?  |
|                                      | Airway, breathing and circulation assessment, LEMON  |
|                                      | Modifications to standard RSI considered?  |
| ✓                                    | PREPARATION and PRE-OXYGENATION  |
|                                      | Optimise patient position and gain 360° access   |
|                                      | Establish monitoring (BP, SpO <sub>2</sub> , ECG) and ensure visible to team leader  |
|                                      | IV access x 2 and free running fluids  |
|                                      | Connect nasal cannulae to patient and wall O <sub>2</sub> (start at 5l/min, increase to 15l/min with induction)                      |
|                                      | Pre-oxygenation 15l/min via NRB or BVM 3-5min  |
| ✓                                    | PREPARATION - EQUIPMENT  |
|                                      | Suction – on and accessible to intubator's right hand.   |
|                                      | Endotracheal tubes x 2 (Size 8.0 for male, 7.0 for female plus size smaller) 3 for paed's (calculated size plus 1 above and 1 below) |
|                                      | ETT cuffs checked and lubricated, (mounted on stylet or bougie if required)  |
|                                      | 20ml syringe   |
|                                      | 2 x working laryngoscopes, Mac blades 3 & 4  |
|                                      | King vision video laryngoscope   |
|                                      | Tube tie, under neck   |
|                                      | Catheter mount   |
|                                      | HME filter   |
|                                      | ETCO <sub>2</sub> attached to filter and monitor, warmed up  |
|                                      | Stethoscope  |
|                                      | Bougie & stylet  |
|                                      | Magill's forceps   |
|                                      | Plan B – LMA or Intubating LMA (consider having open and ready)  |
|                                      | Plan C – Melker kit or Needle cricothyroidotomy or Scalpel and size 6 ETT  |
| ✓                                    | PREPARATION – TEAM ROLES   |
|                                      | Airway / intubation  |
|                                      | Cricoid pressure, if desired   |
|                                      | Intubator's assistant (pass equipment)   |
|                                      | Drug administration and turn nasal cannulae up to 15L/min on induction   |
|                                      | Manual in line stabilisation (as required)   |
| ✓                                    | TEAM BRIEFING AND FAILED INTUBATION PLAN   |
|                                      | Plan A e.g. direct laryngoscopy and intubation   |
|                                      | Plan B e.g. LMA or intubating LMA  |
|                                      | Plan C e.g. Bag Valve Mask Ventilation   |
|                                      | Plan D e.g. Surgical Airway  |
| ✓                                    | DRUGS  |
|                                      | Estimate patient weight  |
|                                      | Suxamethonium 1.5mg/kg or Rocuronium (if sux contraindicated) 1.5mg/kg   |
|                                      | Thiopentone 3-5mg/kg OR Propofol 1.5-3mg/kg OR Ketamine 1- 2mg/kg  |
|                                      | Consider narcotic  |
|                                      | Rescue drugs drawn up: Atropine, Metaraminol, Adrenaline   |
| ✓                                    | CONFIRMATION OF AIRWAY   |
|                                      | Check ETCO <sub>2</sub> trace on monitor   |
|                                      | Listen for air entry, axillae / stomach, Confirm placement   |
| ✓                                    | PREPARE FOR TRANSFER   |
|                                      | Maintain anaesthesia, analgesia and paralysis  |
|                                      | Insert bite block or Guedel airway   |

**Induction and Paralysis**

- Induction agent and paralysis are given in pre-determined doses rapidly with generous flushes in between.
- If cricoid pressure is to be used it should commence as soon as there is loss of consciousness.
- If suxamethonium is used onset of paralysis will be indicated by fasciculation (this may be subtle)
- Do not ventilate the patient at this point.

**Intubation and confirmation of placement**

- Intubation should proceed promptly with a focus on maintaining oxygenation and prompt progression to failed or difficult intubation drill if not succeeding.
- Tube placement is confirmed by a continuous ETCO<sub>2</sub> waveform and seeing the tube pass through the cords.
- Both axillae and stomach should be auscultated in addition to checking ETCO<sub>2</sub> waveform.

**Post-intubation management**

See [Packaging and Ongoing Management of the Ventilated Patient](#).

## 15.3 Anaesthetic drugs

### Induction agents

*Thiopentone* – dose 1 – 3mg/kg

- Gold standard for RSI due to rapid onset and predictable degree of anaesthesia
- main side effect is hypotension (can be overcome by combining smaller doses with an opiate such as fentanyl)
- beneficial in head injuries?(lowers ICP; anticonvulsant)

*Propofol* – dose 0.5 – 2mg/kg

- profound respiratory depressant
- more hypotensive compared with thiopentone (therefore not suitable for most emergency inductions)
- useful as ongoing sedation for ventilated patient if plan is to awaken soon after admission

*Ketamine* – dose 1-2mg/kg

- dissociative anaesthetic (causes state of profound analgesia and anaesthesia where patient may appear awake)
- airway reflexes are NOT preserved at induction doses
- causes increase in sympathetic activity resulting in increased BP, increased ICP and bronchodilation
- indications: acute asthma, profound hypovolaemic shock (eg. AAA)
- contraindications: head injuries (relative), IHD

*Fentanyl* - dose 3µg/kg

- short-acting opiate; profound respiratory depressant
- useful in combination with other induction agents (allows smaller doses to be used, causing less hypotension)
- avoid in shocked patients who are relying on their sympathetic drive to maintain their BP as fentanyl abolishes this and can result in severe hypotension
- prevents the rise in ICP from laryngoscopy in head injured patients
- high doses can cause chest wall muscle rigidity and difficulty in ventilation( treat with suxamethonium)

*Midazolam* – dose 0.15mg/kg

- slow onset of action and hypotension has resulted in it **no longer being considered suitable for RSI**
- has amnestic and anticonvulsant properties
- useful in ongoing sedation of ventilated patient

*Morphine* – dose 0.1 – 0.2mg/kg

- sometimes used as an adjunct to other induction agents
- less reliable respiratory depression and suppression of airway reflexes, slow onset and hypotension has meant it is no longer recommended for RSI
- useful with midazolam as ongoing sedation of ventilated patient

## Neuromuscular blockers

*Suxamethonium* – dose 1 -2mg/kg

- non-competitive depolarizing NM blocker
- IV administration leads to fasciculations 10 – 15 sec
- max. paralysis 30 – 60 sec
- return of spontaneous respirations 3 – 5 mins
- full ventilatory capacity 8 -10 mins

Side effects:

- fasciculations leading to increased intragastric, intraocular & intracranial pressures (possible clinical significance)
- increased serum K<sup>+</sup> (up to 0.5 mmol/l in average patient; up to 5-10mmol/l in patients with burns or crush injuries > 48 hrs, or those with NM disorders;
- patients with renal failure who are not hyperkalaemic can be given suxamethonium)
- bradycardia (especially children or repeated doses in adults)
- Scoline apnoea (congenital absence of pseudocholinesterase results in prolongation of paralysis (hrs) – not a contraindication in most patients ventilated for transport as usually ventilated longer than this)
- Malignant hyperthermia (genetic skeletal muscle abnormality triggered by inhalational anaesthetics and suxamethonium leads to muscle rigidity and breakdown, autonomic instability, hyperkalemia and acute renal failure. Often fatal.) Treated with dantrolene.

*Vecuronium* – dose 0.3mg/kg (intubating dose); 0.1mg/kg (ongoing relaxation)

- competitive, non-depolarizing blocker
- indications: intubation in patients where suxamethonium contraindicated, ongoing relaxation in ventilated patient
- IV administration→ onset of paralysis 90 sec.
- Intubating conditions in 2 1/2 mins.
- return of spontaneous respirations 45 mins.
- full ventilatory capacity ~ 60 mins.
- no significant side effects or contraindications (difficult airway?)

*Rocuronium* – dose 1-1.5mg/kg (in RSI); 0.15mg/kg (ongoing relaxation)

- competitive, non-depolarizing blocker
- indications as above but more rapid onset makes it an attractive option where suxamethonium contraindicated and rapid intubation conditions desirable.
- Intubating conditions in 60 sec.
- Duration 10-40 minutes THIS MAKES ROCURONIUM A POOR CHOICE FOR THE INEXPERIENCED INTUBATOR. An antidote, sugammadex, exists but is currently not carried by RFDS.
- Minimal side effects.

## 15.4 Difficult intubation

### *Theory*

1. In the emergency and retrieval setting the risk of a difficult or failed intubation is increased by the nature of the patients and the settings in which intubation may be carried out.
2. Some features that might suggest potential for difficulty can be assessed prior intubation however a great many difficult intubations are unpredictable.
3. All doctors should have a well rehearsed plan to manage a difficult intubation.
4. All doctors and flight nurses should be intimately familiar with the equipment carried by RFDS for management of a difficult airway.
5. Communication needs to be clear in a crisis. Commands must be addressed to individuals, heard then repeated back to ensure they were heard correctly.
6. Ensure that as a team leader you are able to listen to suggestions from your team and utilize the skills of all that are available.
7. PATIENTS DO NOT DIE FROM FAILURE TO INTUBATE, THEY DIE FROM FAILURE TO OXYGENATE.
8. OXYGENATION DOES NOT REQUIRE VENTILATION.
9. GET HELP EARLY.
10. There is no room for hesitation in a “Can’t intubate, Can’t oxygenate” situation. Decisive progress to a surgical airway will save lives.

### *Pre-flight and In-flight management*

#### **Assessment of the patient**

1. History. Congenital or acquired airway problems (rheumatoid, ankylosing spondylitis, pregnancy). Trauma of face, neck, or larynx. Radiotherapy. Previous difficulties (ask patient, check note, medic alert etc.)
2. Examination
  - a) Anatomy – small mouth, receding chin, high arched palate, big tongue, bull neck, morbid obesity, large breasts.
  - b) Scarring, radiotherapy fibrosis.
  - c) Neck flexion.
  - d) Poor dentition (gaps to get blade stuck in, awkwardly placed teeth)
  - e) C-spine immobilization, dental wiring.
  - f) Beard hiding abnormalities
  - g) Tests
    - Inter-incisor gap – distance between incisors with mouth fully open (<3cm intubation more difficult)
    - Mandible protrusion – if can’t protrude lower incisors anterior to upper likely to be more difficult.
    - Mallampati - examine oropharynx with mouth fully open, tongue out and no phonating, if unable to see uvula more difficult.
    - Thyromental distance – with neck extended measure distance from tip thyroid cartilage to tip of mandible < 6cm predicts 75% difficult laryngoscopies.



## Preparation

- Position patient to your best advantage. Neck flexed, head extended. Pillow under shoulders. Obese patients ramped (external auditory meatus in line with manubrium.) If necessary lower the bed or stand on a box to get the best view.
- Prepare your equipment and assistants.
- Use of introducer or bougie at the outset. Have capnography attached to the BVM.

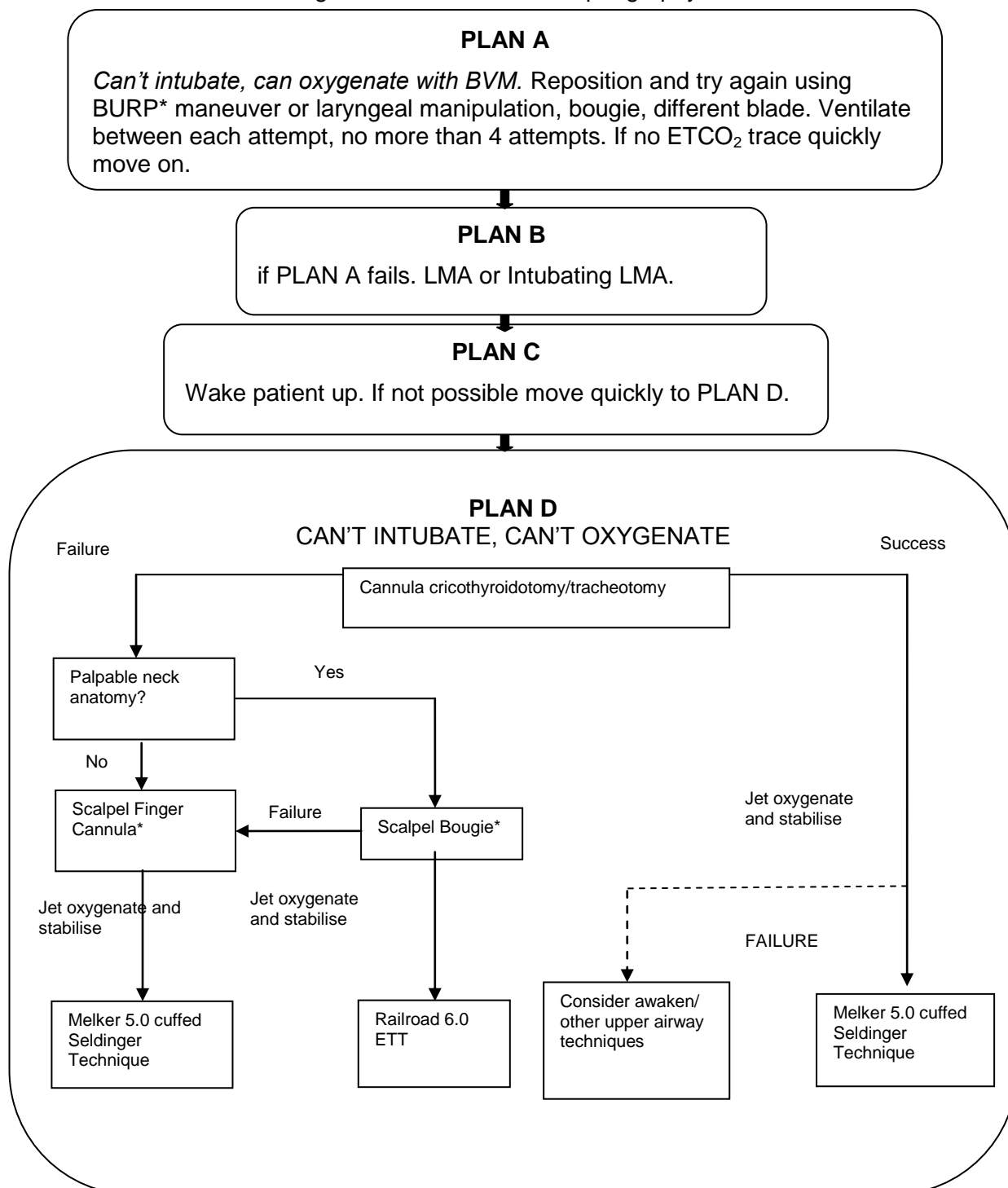


Figure 28. Difficult airway algorithm

- BURP – Moving the larynx by applying “Backwards, Up and to the Right Pressure”
- Scalpel Finger Cannula Technique – Make a 8-10cm caudal to cranial vertical midline skin incision then use blunt dissection with fingers of both hands to separate strap muscles and identify trachea. A 14G cannula is then inserted directly into the airway as per needle cricothyroidotomy technique. Jet oxygenation can now be provided to reoxygenate then the cannula can be used to guide the Seldinger wire of the Melker kit. (See Part 3 - Procedures Scalpel Finger Cannula Technique and Melker Cricothyroidotomy Conversion Technique).
- Scalpel Bougie Technique - Midline anatomy can easily be identified, stabilize with non dominant hand and make a horizontal incision through cricothyroid membrane. Without removing blade, rotate 90° and pull towards yourself creating a triangular window through which you insert a Frova bougie feeling for tracheal rings. Jet oxygenation can be provided via the hollow bougie or a size 6 ETT can now be railroaded over the top. (See Part 3 - Procedures Scalpel Bougie Technique)

## References

Allman K, Wilson I. Oxford Handbook of Anaesthesia. 2<sup>nd</sup> Ed. Oxford University Press , 2007

Heard, A; Green, R; Eakins, P. The formulation and introduction of a “can’t intubate, can’t ventilate” algorithm into clinical practice. *Anaesthesia*, 2009; 64:601-608.

## 15.5 Modification of RSI for special circumstances

### Theory

- A number of physiological states may require modification of anaesthetic technique or choice of drugs used. Prior to anaesthesia the adequacy of ventilation and haemodynamic stability should be assessed.

#### Patients with impaired ventilation

##### *Pre-oxygenation*

- Ensure maximal pre-oxygenation and apnoeic oxygenation with nasal prongs at 15l/min and well fitted NRB mask at 15l/min.
- If still insufficient oxygenation consider adding NIV with FiO<sub>2</sub> of 100% and pressures titrated to SaO<sub>2</sub> and comfort.
- If unable to tolerate NIV consider small titrated doses of ketamine with NIV. “Delayed Sequence Induction”
- If bradypnoeic, commence assisted ventilation with BVM and attached PEEP valve +/- airway adjunct.

#### Acute severe asthma

- ensure well pre-oxygenated, sitting up
- once loss of consciousness occurs – lie down and intubate
- ensure well sedated and paralysed post-intubation
- best choice: ketamine/suxamethonium or thiopentone/fentanyl/suxamethonium
- See [Ventilation Strategies](#)

#### Patients with haemodynamic instability

##### *Haemorrhage*

- Ensure 2 x wide bore cannulae and adequate volume resuscitation
- Control sources of blood loss including compressable and splintable (eg, pelvis and femur).
- Smaller doses of induction agents, consider ketamine as first choice.
- Exclude obstructive causes of shock.
- Avoid excessive tidal volumes.

##### *Distributive*

- Goal directed fluid resuscitation
- Commence vasopressor infusion
- Have short acting vasopressor drawn up and ready to use as boluses
- Check and correct potassium / calcium, modify drug choices accordingly
- Consider central and arterial access
- Fentanyl and ketamine for induction

**Head injured patient**

- Aim to prevent secondary brain injury by avoiding:
- Hypoxia
- Increased intracranial pressure - secondary to laryngoscopy; may be diminished by fentanyl but not lignocaine.
- Hypotension (BP < 90 mmHg systolic)
- best choice : thiopentone/fentanyl/suxamethonium

**Hyperkalaemia**

- aggressive management of potassium level PRIOR to induction
- AVOID suxamethonium
- best choice: any induction agent/high dose vecuronium or rocuronium

**Upper airway obstruction**

- RSI CONTRAINDICATED
- transport to specialist anaesthetist ASAP
- consider surgical airway if obstruction imminent and hand ventilation /intubation fails

**References**

Criner G, Barnette R, D'Alonzo G. Critical Care Study Guide: Text and Review. 2nd ed. Springer. 2010.

Currie D, Ritchie E, Scott S. The management of head injuries – a practical guide for the emergency room. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Oxford University Press. 2000.

Hunt C, Fletcher S. Tracheal Intubation in Head Injury : A Practical Guide

Part 1. Why intubate? When to intubate and choice of drugs. *Trauma Grapevine*. Mar 1999; 2(1):3 – 5.

Part 2. Intubation in head injury – How? *Trauma Grapevine*. Jul 1999; 2(2):2-3. Trauma Department Liverpool Hospital NSW.

Kunjappan V, Brown E, Alexander G. Rapid Sequence Induction Using Vecuronium. *Anaes Analg*. 1986 May; 65(5):503-6

Lafferty K, Kulkarni R, Windle M. Medications used in Tracheal Intubation. Updated: May16,2011. Medscape Reference. <http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/109739-overview#showall> (accessed Feb 2012)

Monaghan M, Seppelt I. Current Controversies in Trauma Airway Management. *Indian J of Crit Care Med*. 2004;8 :106 – 110.

Walls R, Murphy M. Manual Of Emergency Airway Management. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins. 2008.

Weingart S. Preoxygenation, Reoxygenation, and Delayed Sequence Intubation in the Emergency Department. *J Emerg Med*. 2011;40(6):661-7

## 15.6 Packaging and Ongoing Management of the Ventilated Patient.

### Theory

1. All ventilated patients by definition are critically ill and require careful attention to detail in supporting and monitoring all bodily functions.
2. Continuous monitoring of HR, BP, ventilator settings, SaO<sub>2</sub> and ETCO<sub>2</sub> is essential and must not be disrupted during preparation of the patient for transport or while loading/unloading patient from aircraft or ambulance.
3. Refer: [Indications for Intubation](#), [Conduct of Rapid Sequence Induction](#), [Anaesthetic drugs](#), [Difficult intubation](#), [Modification of RSI for special circumstances](#)

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. All ventilated patients must have a doctor, flight nurse team.
2. No more than one ventilated patient to be carried on aircraft at one time. Exceptions may occur in mass casualty events or when using the "Lifeflight Jet" if a 2<sup>nd</sup> RFDS doctor is available and on board.
3. Priority will depend on diagnosis and patient's condition plus local resources. (e.g. ventilated trauma patient in small hospital may be Priority 1 whereas stable ventilated patient with overdose in regional hospital may be Priority 2 or 3).
4. RFDS doctor and flight nurse will usually go into the referring hospital to package patient for transport and escort patient to airport. This is especially important if patient is unstable, requires intubation or other procedures. However, if patient is time-critical and already prepared, the referring doctor *should be requested to bring the prepared patient to airport*.
5. Packaging of patient for transport:

#### Airway

- Safety of endotracheal tube (ETT) is doctor's 1<sup>st</sup> priority at all times.

#### Check ETT

- Position
- Patency
- Presence of throat pack?
- Cuff pressure with manometry if using air in cuff or exchange for saline.
- Confirm ETT position (clinically, ETCO<sub>2</sub>, or CXR if available).
- Ensure ETT is well secured (consider bite block).
- Immobilize cervical spine as required

#### Breathing

- Connect ETT to flexible Cobbs connector then to circuit.
- Check all circuit connections and ensure correct order and placement of heat and moisture exchanger (HME) positioned closest to ETT, with ETCO<sub>2</sub> sensor between HME and flexible connector, to prevent fogging.
- and ETCO<sub>2</sub>.
- Check ventilation: Chest expansion, capnography waveform and saturation.
- Check and record ventilator settings including; FiO<sub>2</sub>, V<sub>T</sub>, RR, PAWP, PEEP, PS, mode of ventilation.

- Monitor ETCO<sub>2</sub> and SaO<sub>2</sub> continuously.
- Monitor arterial blood gases and tailor ventilation accordingly.
- Check oxygen supply hose connections for leaks.
- Check cylinder or aircraft oxygen supply.
- Calculate oxygen requirements:

Flow rate x 1.5 journey time (min).

The Oxylog 3000 displays oxygen consumption in l/min, the Oxylog 1000 can be estimated at 8l/min for “air mix” and 15L/min for “no air mix”. Non invasive ventilation can use very large amounts to compensate for leak (eg. 25L/min). When using ventilators add 1-2 L/min for driving gas.

A PC-12 aircraft carries approx 3000 litres plus 2 D cylinders (at 1600 litres each).

C (490litres) cylinders are used in oxyvivas and for transfer from aircraft to ambulance.

Table 15. Approximate Duration of O<sub>2</sub> Cylinders

| Size | Flow Rate (L/min) |     |     |     |     |     |    |
|------|-------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|
|      | 4                 | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 15  | 25 |
| C    | 120               | 90  | 80  | 70  | 60  | 30  | 18 |
| D    | 400               | 320 | 270 | 230 | 200 | 100 | 60 |

- Insert chest drains for ventilated chest trauma, as required, attach appropriate one way valve collection system (eg. Pneumostat, Heimlich valve)

## Adult Ventilation

See 15.7 Ventilation Strategies.

- As a guide, for an adult : RR 8-10 breaths/min. TV 6-7 mL/kg BW and adjust according to SaO<sub>2</sub>, ETCO<sub>2</sub> and/or ABGs.
- Oxylog 1000
  - Check airmix (FiO<sub>2</sub> 0.6)/ no airmix (FiO<sub>2</sub> 1.0) is set as required.
  - Observe and record airway pressures.
  - Check TV using Wright spirometer
  - PEEP is added by connecting PEEP valve to expiratory valve of ventilator circuit after setting amount of PEEP required. Note Oxylog pressure gauge will not show PEEP due to non-return patient connector valve.
- Oxylog 3000
  - Dial up FiO<sub>2</sub> as required
  - Select ventilation mode (CMV, SIMV, PCV)
  - Depending on ventilation mode used check or set other parameters such as PEEP, PS, PIP, I:E ratio

## Paediatric Ventilation

See [Paediatric Considerations](#)

## Airway and Breathing Back-up

- Have bag valve mask and or demand resuscitator on hand.
- Have means of re-intubating in case of extubation (laryngoscope and spare ETT)
- These should be available at all stages including ambulance and intrahospital movement of patients.

## Transferring between vehicles

- To transfer to ambulance, the O<sub>2</sub> line from the Oxylog must be disconnected from the hospital wall O<sub>2</sub> and transferred to ambulance portable O<sub>2</sub> supply.
- Once in the ambulance the O<sub>2</sub> should be connected to the ambulance 'D' cylinders, saving Oxyviva or spare cylinder for transfer to aircraft.
- *Before transferring to any O<sub>2</sub> supply check contents are sufficient and supply is on. Constantly monitor O<sub>2</sub> availability.*
- All movements should be coordinated and controlled by the person at the head end who is responsible for ETT security (i.e. doctor). It may be prudent to disconnect ETT from ventilator for transfers from bed to stretcher etc.

***A back up form of ventilation must be available at all times (BVM, T-piece)***

## Circulation

- Adequate access (minimum 2x peripheral IV cannulae), patent and secure (visualise insertion site to be sure not extravasating.)
- Spare injection port not occupied by ongoing infusions.
- Ensure adequate perfusion, strict fluid balance, blood products and inotropes if needed.
- Monitor urine output via IDC as a measure of organ perfusion.
- Lactate may be a useful measure of the adequacy of organ perfusion.
- Central lines and arterial lines for selected cases.
- Monitor BP, HR, rhythm at 15 minutely (or less) intervals.
- Stop haemorrhage wherever possible. Adopt a minimum handling policy for trauma patients, including prevention of all unnecessary movement, pelvic manipulation and additional log rolls. Ideally one log roll only and examination, application of pelvic binder and scoop for stretcher transfer should occur at that time.
- Where necessary aggressive fluid resuscitation and/or inotropic support should be carried out to improve haemodynamic stability prior to moving the patient. If the patient is time-critical this should be carried out during transport.

## Drugs

- Ensure adequate supplies for duration of transport, check infusion pumps functioning correctly.
- Ensure timely delivery of ongoing intermittent drugs such as antibiotics.
- Ensure no line disconnections.
- Continuous infusion of sedation and muscle relaxant is preferable to intermittent bolus doses (with some exceptions).
- If patient develops bronchospasm, in-line salbutamol aerosol can be inserted into circuit as close to ETT as possible. Drug should be administered timed with inspiration.

**Disability**

- Record pupil size and reactivity, consider possibility of awareness. Ensure pressure area and corneal protection.
- NGT / OGT drainage, to reduce gastric distension and risk of aspiration and prevent splinting of diaphragm, which can reduce venous return (especially children).

**Environment, Electrolytes etc.**

- Monitor temperature (consider temperature probe inserted into oesophagus).
- Where appropriate warm with warming blanket (BARRIER EasyWarm®).
- All ventilated patients require a nasogastric or orogastric tube to reduce gastric distension and risk of aspiration and prevent splinting of diaphragm, which can reduce venous return (especially children).
- Protect eyes and pressure points.
- Monitor electrolytes, replace as necessary.
- Maintain normoglycaemia, if necessary insulin dextrose infusion.
- Provide blood products as necessary.

**Other**

- During all phases of transport, the doctor must have access to alternative means of ventilating patient in case of ventilator or oxygen failure (e.g. bag valve mask). He / she should also have intubation equipment and suction in case of dislodged or blocked ETT or cuff failure.
- Escorts – all ventilated patients require 2 persons (one a doctor) to escort them at all times. If stable, doctor can escort patient with ambulance paramedic from airport to tertiary hospital. If unstable, doctor should consider getting flight nurse to accompany him/her.
- Communications – good communications between referring doctor and RFDS doctor; and RFDS doctor and receiving hospital ED or ICU is essential for a smooth transfer. RFDS doctor should ensure early contact with receiving hospital and contact again with updated ETA and patient's condition on landing at Jandakot.



## 15.7 Ventilation Strategies

### Theory

A ventilation strategy will ensure that in addressing the patient's underlying pathology no further lung damage is acquired. Even for patients with normal lungs the aim should be to minimise the risk of ventilator induced lung injury.

In order to deliver the most appropriate ventilation first determine if your patient is suffering from an obstructive problem (asthma, COPD, bronchiolitis), in which case use the **obstructive strategy**. For all other patients use a **lung protective strategy**.

### Pre-flight and In-flight management using the Oxylog 3000

#### Lung Protective strategy

Aim for low tidal volumes, titrate PEEP and FiO<sub>2</sub> concurrently to achieve adequate oxygenation, titrate RR to normalise pCO<sub>2</sub> and pH.

Special circumstances:

- Head injury: excessive PEEP can result in hypotension and reduced cerebral perfusion pressure. Default PEEP of 5cm H<sub>2</sub>O adequate. Nurse 30° head up. Aim for low normal pCO<sub>2</sub>.
- Metabolic acidosis: RR ≥ that which patient achieved. Allow additional pressure supported patient breaths (ASB = 10cm H<sub>2</sub>O, Trigger = 2).
- Hypertensive APO: start PEEP=10cm H<sub>2</sub>O and rapidly titrate up whilst rapidly titrating GTN infusion to SBP ≤ 140mmHg.
- Cardiogenic shock: avoid high-level PEEP as worsens hypotension.
- Pregnancy: Nurse left lateral position. Vt = 8ml/kg ideal body weight, RR 18-20 bpm aim for low normal pCO<sub>2</sub> & normal pH.

#### Obstructive strategy

Aim for tidal volumes about 8ml/kg, low respiratory rates and high expiratory times with zero PEEP. Permissive hypercapnoea with pH > 7.1.



Either volume controlled or pressure controlled modes may be used however if an uncuffed paediatric tube is in place use pressure controlled ventilation. The following charts are recommended starting points only and should be modified depending on hourly ABG's and haemodynamics.

#### Rapidly Deteriorating Patients.

- **Remove from ventilator and bag ventilate.** Get a feel for the lungs.
- Check tube – displacement, obstruction, dislodged.
- Check patient – pneumothorax, decompress.
- Check ventilator



## Volume Controlled Ventilation with Oxylog 3000

Table 16. Volume Controlled Ventilation with Oxylog 3000

|                            |                                       | Lung Protective Strategy   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | Obstructive Strategy  |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|---|
| Mode                       |                                       | SIMV / IPPV / CMV  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | SIMV/IPPV/CMV   |
| Vt                         |                                       | 6ml/kg IBW   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |   |
| RR                         |                                       | 16-18 bpm then titrate to normal pCO <sub>2</sub> / pH   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |   |
| Pmax (alarm)               |                                       | ≥ 40cm H <sub>2</sub> O (if alarms, follow instructions below)   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | ≥ 40 H <sub>2</sub> O (if alarms, follow instructions below)  |
| FiO <sub>2</sub> (%)       | Titrate to SpO <sub>2</sub> of 88-95% | 40   | 40 | 50 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 80 | 90 | Minimal FiO <sub>2</sub> for SpO <sub>2</sub> 88-95%  |
| PEEP (cm H <sub>2</sub> O) |                                       | 5  | 8  | 8  | 10 | 10 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 14 | 14 | Zero PEEP   |
| I:E                        |                                       | 1:1.5 (default)  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | ≥1:4  |
| Autoflow: ON               |                                       | Slope :  (default)  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | Slope:  (default)  |
| Other                      |                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If high PEEP results in ↓BP, give fluids &amp; inotropes keeping MAP &gt;65mmHg (paeds check chart below)</li><li>• If Pmax alarms, check for patient agitation / tube obstruction. If not the cause, perform <b>inspiratory hold manoeuvre</b> – if Pplat &gt;30cm H<sub>2</sub>O ↓Vt by 1ml/kg steps to min 4ml/kg</li></ul> |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sedate +++++, paralysis for minimum duration possible (eg. transport phases only)</li><li>• If ↓↓BP &amp; difficult to ventilate, <b>disconnect</b> tube &amp; allow to expire stacked breaths</li><li>• If Pmax alarms, check for patient agitation / tube obstruction. If not the cause, perform <b>inspiratory hold manoeuvre</b> – if Pplat &gt;30 cm H<sub>2</sub>O ↓Vt by 1ml/kg steps to min 4ml/kg.</li></ul> |

## Pressure Controlled Ventilation with Oxylog 3000

Table 17. Pressure Controlled Ventilation with Oxylog 3000

|                           |                                       | Lung Protective Strategy  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | Obstructive Strategy  |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|---|
| Mode                      |                                       | PCV   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | PCV   |
| Vt                        |                                       | Can't be set- see Pinsp.  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | Can't be set – see Pinsp  |
| RR                        |                                       | See chart and titrate to normal pCO <sub>2</sub> /pH  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | 1/3 normal RR, check expiratory flow curves, if breath stacking,↓↓ RR by further 20%. Permissive hypercapnoea (pH>7.1)  |
| Pmax (alarm)              |                                       | ≥ 40cm H <sub>2</sub> O (if alarms, follow instructions below)  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | ≥ 40cm H <sub>2</sub> O (if alarms, follow instructions below)  |
| FiO <sub>2</sub> (%)      | Titrate to SpO <sub>2</sub> of 88-95% | 40  | 40 | 50 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 80 | 90 | Minimal FiO <sub>2</sub> for SpO <sub>2</sub> 88-95%  |
| PEEP (cmH <sub>2</sub> O) |                                       | 5   | 8  | 8  | 10 | 10 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 14 | 14 |   |
| Pinsp                     |                                       | Start at 20 cmH <sub>2</sub> O then titrate to Vt (6ml/kg IBW)- see chart   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | Start at 20 cm H <sub>2</sub> O then titrate to Vt (6ml/kg IBW)- see chart  |
| I:E                       |                                       | 1:1.5 (default)   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | ≥1:4  |
| Autoflow: ON              |                                       | Slope :  (default)   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | Slope:  (default)  |
| Other                     |                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>If high PEEP results in ↓BP, give fluids &amp; inotropes keeping MAP &gt;65mmHg, or SBP as per chart below (paeds check chart below)</li><li>If Pmax alarms, check for patient agitation / tube obstruction. If not the cause, perform <b>inspiratory hold manoeuvre</b> – if Pplat &gt;30cmH<sub>2</sub>O↓Vt by 1ml/kg steps to min 4ml/kg</li></ul> |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Sedate +++, paralysis for minimum duration possible (eg. transport phases only)</li><li>If ↓↓BP &amp; difficult to ventilate, <b>disconnect</b> tube &amp; allow to expire stacked breaths</li><li>If Pmax alarms, check for patient agitation / tube obstruction. If not the cause, perform <b>inspiratory hold manoeuvre</b> – if Pplat &gt;30cm H<sub>2</sub>O↓Vt by 1ml/kg steps to min 4ml/kg.</li></ul> |

## Age and Weight Modifications

Table 18. Age and Weight Modifications

| Age /IBW             | RR (lung protective) | RR (obstructive) | Vt (6ml/kg)   | SBP     |
|----------------------|----------------------|------------------|---|---------|
| <b>Term/3.5kg</b>    | 40-60                | 13-20            | 20ml.<br><b>Note</b> min Vt on paed circuit is 50ml, must hand ventilate or use paed ventilator.        | ≥50mmHg |
| <b>3 months/6kg</b>  | 30-50                | 10-16            | 36ml.<br><b>Note</b> min Vt on paed circuit is 50ml, must hand ventilate or use paed ventilator.        | ≥50mmHg |
| <b>6 months/8kg</b>  | 30-50                | 10-16            | 48ml.<br><b>Note</b> min Vt on paed circuit is 50ml, may need to hand ventilate or use paed ventilator. | ≥60mmHg |
| <b>1 year/10kg</b>   | 30-40                | 10-13            | 60ml  | ≥65mmHg |
| <b>2 years/13kg</b>  | 20-30                | 7-9              | 78ml  | ≥65mmHg |
| <b>4 years/15kg</b>  | 20                   | 7                | 90ml  | ≥70mmHg |
| <b>6 years/20kg</b>  | 16                   | 6                | 120ml   | ≥75mmHg |
| <b>8 years/25kg</b>  | 16                   | 6                | 150ml   | ≥80mmHg |
| <b>10 years/30kg</b> | 16                   | 6                | 180ml   | ≥85mmHg |
| <b>12 years/40kg</b> | 16                   | 6                | 240ml   | ≥90mmHg |
| <b>14 years/50kg</b> | 16                   | 6                | 300ml   | ≥90mmHg |
| <b>17 years/70kg</b> | 16                   | 6                | 420ml   | ≥90mmHg |

## References

Nickson, C. Own The Oxylog 3000. September 2011.

<http://lifeinthefastlane.com/2011/09/own-the-oxylog-3000/>

Weingart, S. How to Dominate the Ventilator, Part 1. May 2010.

<http://emcrit.org/lectures/vent-part-1/>

Weingart, 2. How to Dominate the Ventilator, Part 2. June 2010.

<http://emcrit.org/podcasts/vent-part-2/>

## 15.8 Paediatric Considerations

### Theory

1. Attention to differences in paediatric anatomy, physiology and psychology is required for the safe induction, intubation and ventilation of children.
2. Airway differences include; high anterior larynx, floppy larynx, large tongue, large occiput, short trachea, cricoid is narrowest part of airway. To overcome some of these differences there are a number of strategies; straight laryngoscope blades under 6 months for picking up the tip of the epiglottis, positioning the child with a sandbag / IV fluid bag under shoulders, avoid hyperextension of neck, avoid pressing on soft tissues of floor of mouth, when applying face mask (keep fingers on bony parts), use of CPAP with Ayre's T-piece.
3. The impact of an over distended stomach from mask ventilation is very significant, early decompression of the stomach is essential to successful ventilation.
4. A short trachea means that flexion or extension of the head can result in either right main bronchus intubation or extubation, the head and neck should be immobilized to avoid this. The tube should be fixed to the maxilla rather than the mandible. A guedel airway may help splint the tube.
5. Doses of drugs should be carefully calculated and checked.
6. Pre-medication with atropine is common 10µg/kg IV to prevent the bradycardia associated with suxamethonium and laryngoscopy. At the very least this should be drawn up and ready to give.
7. In the emergency and transport setting inductions are most commonly IV. Whilst the agents used are the same as for adults please note that doses per kg may differ with faster metabolism or greater sensitivity. Doses may need to be significantly reduced for those with altered conscious level or haemodynamic instability.
  - thiopentone 4-6mg/kg
  - propofol 3-5mg/kg
  - ketamine 2mg/kg (useful for haemodynamically compromised)
  - +/- fentanyl 1-2µg/kg
  - suxamethonium 1-2mg/kg
8. Useful formulae:
  - ETT size  $\text{age}/4 + 4$  or size of nostril or little finger, if using cuffed ETT's a half size smaller may be a better fit. In all cases have a size above and a size below the expected available.
  - Tube length  $\text{age}/2 + 12$ , ETT's are marked with a black line to indicate the depth the tube should pass to.
  - Weight  $(\text{age} + 4) \times 2$
9. Whilst cuffed ETTs are now recommended for those above a size 3, some caution needs to be heeded. Inflation of the cuff should be reserved as a means of compensating for a leak that is interfering with ventilation when higher pressures are required. **Even an uninflated cuff pressure can reach >30cm H<sub>2</sub>O at altitude.** High volume low pressure cuffs should minimize any risk of tracheal trauma however care needs to be taken to only inflate the cuff to the point where the leak is abolished and no more. Air is to be used so that pressure can be closely monitored and adjusted. A manometer is supplied to ensure the cuff pressure is kept at 20-30cm H<sub>2</sub>O, the cuff pressure should be monitored during ascent, at the top of the climb, during descent and on landing. A half size smaller than expected with a traditional

uncuffed tube is likely to be required. The impact of cuff expansion at altitude is greater than for the adult.

10. The use of a cuffed tube helps eliminate need for tube changes, and difficulties ventilating with a large leak around the tube. These ventilation difficulties are more likely to be experienced with lung pathology that requires higher ventilation pressures (eg. aspiration, pneumonia, asthma etc). A cuffed ETT may also be a little less likely to extubate or migrate down the right main bronchus with movement of the patient's head.
11. It is likely that we will still be taking handover of patients with uncuffed ETT's, the decision to change to a cuffed ETT will be a matter of clinical judgment and experience after assessing the adequacy of ventilation and degree of leak.
12. Neither the Oxylog 1000 nor the Oxylog 3000 are paediatric ventilators. Very careful attention must be paid to the adequacy of ventilation. For children under 15kg in particular there are significant challenges such that in some instances manual ventilation may be preferred. All effort must be made to minimize dead space, including not using catheter mounts, ensuring paediatric heat moisture exchange filter (HME) is used and no other extraneous connectors in the circuit. A constant eye must be kept on chest excursion (hand on chest), ETCO<sub>2</sub>, SaO<sub>2</sub>, and ABG's.
13. Modifications to the Oxylog 3000 ventilator software will be made to enable ventilation with much smaller tidal volumes and a paediatric (low dead space) circuit, this circuit will be suitable for tidal volumes of 50-250mL. Recommended tidal volumes are 5-7mL/kg. (Use ideal body weight) When switching the ventilator on you will be asked to choose between paediatric and adult circuits (see Fig.29). After selecting "Disposable paediatric hose" you must then put the Oxylog through a device check.

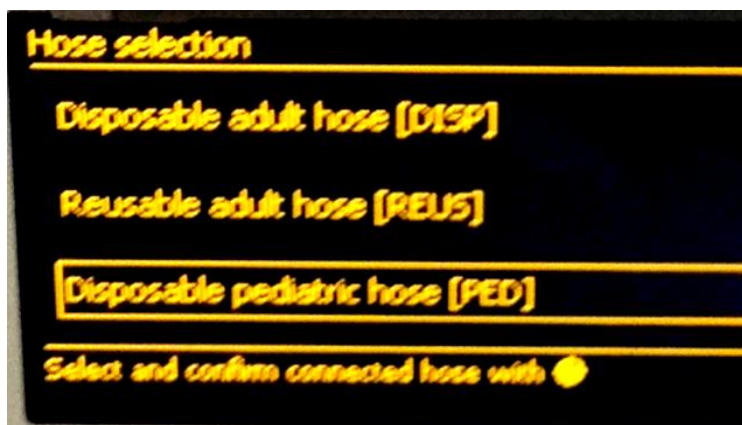


Figure 29. Oxylog 3000 Adult vs. Paediatric hose selection menu

14. The paediatric circuit has been modified to reduce dead space. The circuit is blue and has the following differences. Caution - if end cap dislodged the circuit will not work.

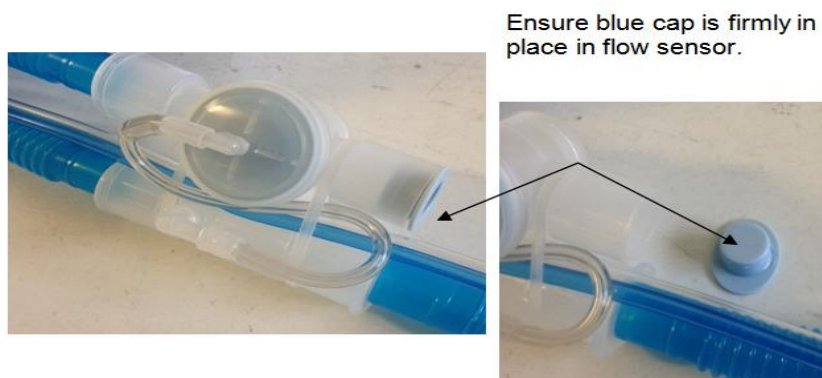


Figure 30. Paediatric circuit showing end cap.

Flow sensor tubing goes directly onto ventilator, there is no intermediate plug.



Figure 31. Flow sensor tubing should be connected as shown

15. Additional dead space can be eliminated by use of a minimum volume HME (Drager) and correct positioning of ETCO<sub>2</sub> cuvette. It is preferable to use an Oxylog 3000 Plus with a specific paediatric cuvette rather than the Propaq ETCO<sub>2</sub> cuvette. Do not use a catheter mount (Cobb's connector).



Figure 32. Paediatric HME



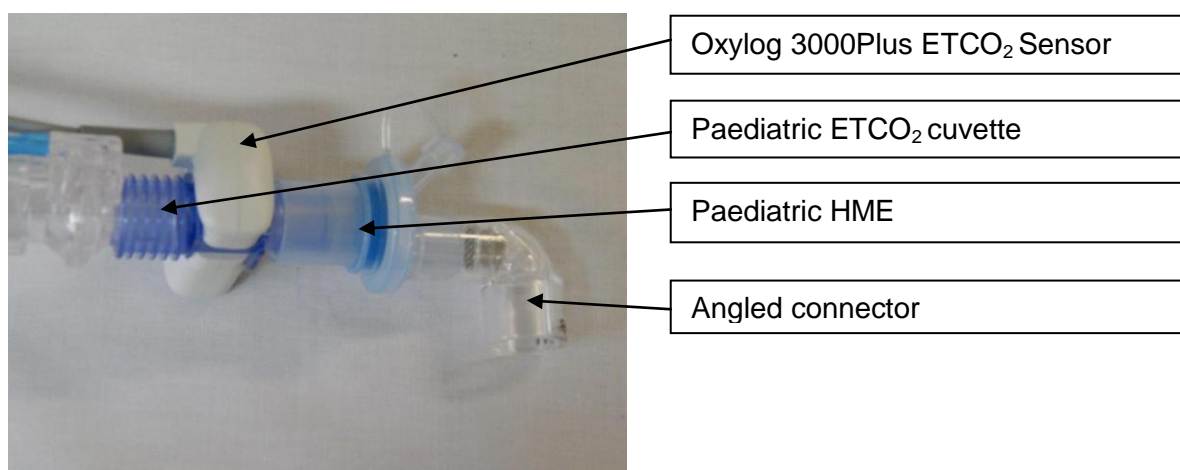


Figure 33. Paediatric circuit assembly for Oxylog 3000Plus.

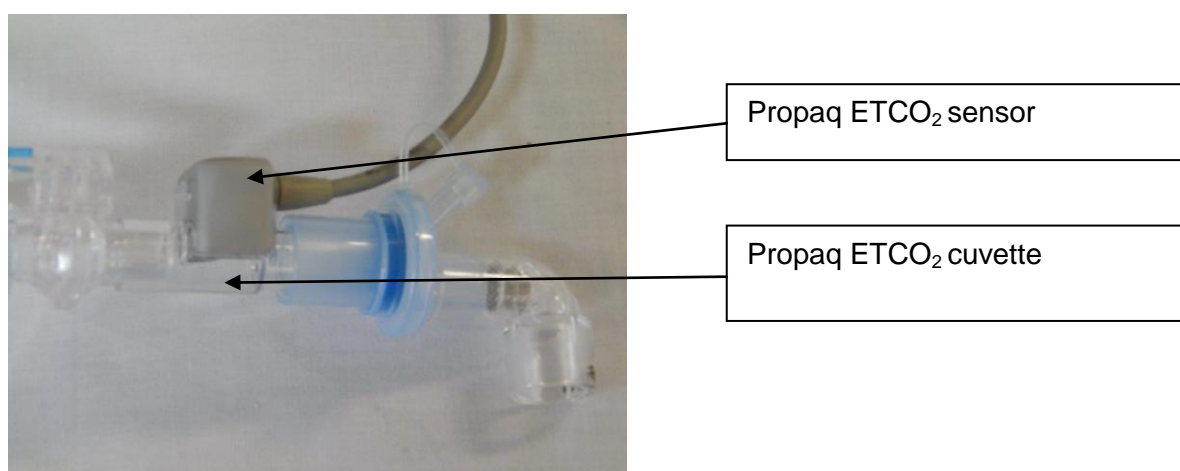


Figure 34. Paediatric circuit assembly for Oxylog 3000

16. Pressure controlled ventilation is commonly used in the paediatric setting using inspiratory pressures of 16-20cm H<sub>2</sub>O with an appropriate rate and 4cm PEEP. PCV will however, not compensate for bronchospasm or tube obstruction.
17. In exceptional circumstances an Oxylog 1000 may need to be used for a paediatric patient, a leak modification has been made to allow for smaller tidal volumes. (See [Paediatric Leak Attachment](#)).

## Reference

Allman K, Wilson I. Oxford Handbook of Anaesthesia. 2<sup>nd</sup> Ed. Oxford University Press. 2007

Weiss M, Dullenkopf A, Fischer J, et al. Prospective randomized controlled multi-centre trial of cuffed or uncuffed endotracheal tubes in small children. *B J Anaes*. 2009; 103 (6): 867-873.

Clements R, Steel A, Bates A, et al. Cuffed endotracheal tube use in paediatric prehospital intubation: challenging the doctrine? *Emerg Med J* 2007; 24:57-58.

Newth C, Rachman B, Patel N, et al. The use of cuffed versus uncuffed endotracheal tubes in pediatric intensive care. *J Pediatr*. 2004 Mar;144(3):333-7.

Knight, G; Consultant ICU Princess Margaret Hospital for Children, Subiaco Western Australia – Personal Communication



## 15.9 Paediatric Leak Attachment

### Description

Cylindrical aluminium connection with a small hole drilled through one wall. The hole is sited between ridges to prevent accidental obstruction. The device has a 22mm female connection at one end for connection to the ventilator and a 15mm female/22mm male connector for connection to the circuit.

### Theory

1. This device was produced for use with the Oxylog 1000 ventilator. It is not required for use with the Oxylog 3000 ventilator.
2. At a set rate of 30 breaths per minute and the lowest minute ventilation setting, the tidal volume delivered by the Oxylog ventilator is approximately 100mL. This limits use of the ventilator to infants of approximately 10kgs or greater.
3. Insertion of a 'deliberate' leak into the circuit allows delivery of smaller tidal volumes. Using this adaptor PMH staff have successfully ventilated infants down to 4kgs.
4. The volume of gas leaked will be determined by the airway pressures and inspiratory time.
5. The device is recommended for use when ventilating infants less than 10kgs. It is the responsibility of the medical practitioner caring for the infant to ensure safe use of the device, with appropriate ventilator, circuit and settings, and for the adequacy of ventilation.

### Technique

1. The device is inserted between the ventilator and patient circuit.
2. As with all infant mechanical ventilation, a ventilation rate is set and then the minute ventilation increased gradually from the minimum setting until adequate ventilation is achieved, gauged by degree of chest expansion, airway pressure, pulse oximetry and capnography. Beware rising pCO<sub>2</sub> resulting in increasing acidosis.
3. The device does not remove the need for frequent re-assessment of the patient and adequacy of ventilation and readjustment of parameters as required.
4. Small infants between 4-10kg may be better if hand ventilated with either a Laerdal bag/valve mask (self-inflating) or T-piece, depending on the experience of the flight doctor.

### Reference

Prepared by: Dr D. McConville, RFDS Western Operations, Port Hedland Base.

Reviewed by: Dr A. Duncan, ICU, Princess Margaret Hospital, Perth.



Figure 35. Paediatric Leak Attachment

## 15.10 Non-invasive Ventilation

### Theory

1. In selected patients, non-invasive ventilatory support may prevent the need for intubation and mechanical ventilation. Complications of failed intubation, ventilator acquired pneumonia, tracheostomy and respiratory muscle wastage are avoided and the patient can continue to communicate. Positive pressure reduces the work of breathing and increases functional residual capacity by recruiting collapsed alveoli. Improvements in lung compliance can also be gained.
2. Left ventricular function can be improved by reduction in preload and afterload.
3. Two forms of NIV can be delivered with the Oxylog 3000: CPAP (continuous positive airway pressure) and BIPAP (biphasic positive airway pressure). CPAP is preferred for the management of acute pulmonary oedema whereas hypoventilatory respiratory failure (eg. from COPD) may benefit from BIPAP or CPAP with pressure support.
4. Traditionally NIV has not been considered in transport medicine due to lack of suitable equipment and the risk of intubation during transport if NIV fails. The Oxylog 3000 in RFDS service, now provides the opportunity to deliver NIV to selected patients.

### Pre-flight and In-flight Management

1. Consider the opportunity for NIV when assessing the flight request. Patients already undergoing NIV should prompt consideration of using this technique for ventilatory support. The technique is likely to be less suitable for longer flight times as risk of failure increases with time.
2. Prepare to go in to the referring hospital and take the Oxylog 3000, CPAP mask (with attachment points) and a harness.
3. Time in the hospital is required to establish if treatment will work (at least ½ hour). Does the patient tolerate it, do parameters such as blood gases improve, is patient likely to become fatigued? NIV may not be a good option with restricted pilot hours.
4. Gas consumption during NIV is greater than that for IPPV (eg. up to 30L/min). Have you got enough oxygen?

### Patient Selection

#### Contraindications

1. Not fully conscious or cooperative.
2. Risk of, or actual, airway obstruction or deterioration in conscious state.
3. Facial abnormalities, trauma, recent surgery or burns.
4. Suffering from excessive secretions, vomiting or bowel obstruction.
5. Having a high oxygen requirement or suffering life threatening hypoxia.
6. Profoundly acidaemic.
7. Haemodynamically unstable, suffering dysrhythmias or other severe co-morbidities.
8. Pneumothoraces (unless ICC in situ).
9. Recent upper GI surgery.

#### Indications

1. Acute pulmonary oedema.
2. Obstructive sleep apnoea.

3. Acute exacerbation of COPD.
4. Ventilator weaning.
5. Respiratory failure in immunocompromised (e.g. Neutropaenic) patients at high risk of ventilator acquired pneumonia.
6. Other acute respiratory failure where no contraindications.
7. Chronic respiratory failure e.g. Neuromuscular disease where it is desirable to avoid intubation as weaning would be difficult.

### **Complications**

1. Mask intolerance (25%)
2. Skin damage.
3. Gastric distension and aspiration. (Routine gastric decompression is not indicated however.)
4. Patient may still become obtunded and lose airway.
5. Sinus pain, nasal congestion.
6. Raised intraocular pressure.
7. Raised intracranial pressure.
8. Hypotension if hypovolaemic.

### **Ventilator set up**

1. Use face mask and harness and connect to ventilator hose.
2. NIV can be delivered in CPAP and PCV modes on the ventilator. In NIV mode mask leakages will be detected and compensated and included in measured values for Vt and MV.
3. Switch on NIV by pressing Settings key, then scroll to page 2/2. On NIV line, change to ON and confirm.
4. Biphase Positive Airway Pressure (BIPAP) can be delivered using NIV in the PCV mode. This is like giving CPAP at two alternating pressures.
5. Pressure support (a gas flow triggered by inspiratory effort to a set pressure) can be provided using the ASB (assisted spontaneous breathing) function in either BIPAP or CPAP.

### **Tips to aid patient compliance**

1. *If patient able, allow the patient to hold the mask initially until used to it then apply harness.*
2. *Start with lower pressures and titrate up, the pressure should make the work of breathing easier rather than result in the patient fighting it. Provide an antiemetic.*

### **BIPAP**

*For hypoventilatory respiratory failure (e.g. acute exacerbation COPD)*

- Set PCV
- Turn NIV on
- I:E ratio 1:2
- PEEP = 4cm H<sub>2</sub>O
- P<sub>insp</sub> = 10cm H<sub>2</sub>O

- Titrate  $\text{FiO}_2$  to  $\text{SaO}_2 >90\%$
- Adjust Trigger to maximise synchronisation with the patients breathing.
- Repeat ABG at 30 minutes
  - i. If  $\text{PCO}_2$  decreased by 10-20% then PEEP = 4cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , P<sub>insp</sub> = 16 cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$
  - ii. If  $\text{PCO}_2$  decreased by  $<10\%$  then PEEP = 6cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , P<sub>insp</sub> = 20 cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$
  - iii. If  $\text{PCO}_2$  rising or clinically no improvement consider intubation.

*For acute pulmonary oedema*

- Set PCV
- Turn NIV on
- I:E ratio 1:2
- PEEP = 8cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$
- P<sub>insp</sub> = 10 cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$
- Commence  $\text{FiO}_2$  100%
- Adjust trigger to maximise synchronisation with patients breathing.
- Repeat ABG at 30 minutes
  - i. If no improvement clinically and with ABG consider intubation.
  - ii. Titrate PEEP to 10cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and P<sub>insp</sub> to 15cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$

*If no improvement after 1 hour consider intubation pre-flight.*

**CPAP**

*For acute pulmonary oedema*

- Set CPAP
- Turn NIV on
- I:E ratio 1:2
- PEEP = 10 cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$
- PS = 0
- Commence  $\text{FiO}_2$  100%
- Repeat ABG at 30 min and assess patient clinically.
  - i. If no improvement consider intubation
  - ii. Titrate PEEP to effect (may need 15-20cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ )

*For hypoventilatory respiratory failure*

- Set CPAP
- Turn NIV on
- I:E ratio 1:2
- PEEP = 4 cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$
- PS = 15 cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$
- Titrate  $\text{FiO}_2$  to  $\text{SaO}_2 >90\%$
- Adjust trigger to maximise synchronisation with patient breathing.

- Repeat ABG at 30 min.
  - i. If no improvement consider intubation
  - ii. Titrate pressure support (ASB) to effect

*If no improvement after 1 hour consider intubation pre-flight.*

## **References**

Bersten A, Soni N. Oh's Intensive Care Manual. 6th ed. Butterworth Heinemann. 2009.

Drager Medical. Oxylog 3000 Instructions for Use.

Beed M, Sherman R, Mahajan R. Emergencies in Critical Care. Oxford: Oxford University Press. 2007.

Dunn R, Dilley S, Brookes J, et al. The Emergency Medicine Manual. 5th ed. Tennyson, South Australia: Venom Publishing. 2010.

## 15.11 High Flow Nasal Cannula Therapy

### *Description*

This therapy is a means of delivering high flow humidified oxygen via purpose specific nasal prongs. RFDS does not currently carry this equipment but it is increasingly being instituted in larger regional centres.

### *Theory*

1. Despite the increasing popularity of this modality, evidence for its use is limited and generally confined to bronchiolitis.
2. This is a form of non-invasive respiratory support used to allow oxygen or an air / oxygen mix to be humidified and delivered at high flows. (30-60L/min)
3. The proposed mechanisms for its effects include: Dead space washout, Decreased nasopharyngeal resistance resulting in improved pulmonary compliance, Variable amounts of PEEP resulting in alveolar recruitment.
4. There is some evidence that use of HFNC can reduce rates of progression to invasive ventilation and its associated complications.
5. There are a variety of systems in use with the following features: Either a medical air / oxygen blender or air-entrainment, a humidifier with feed from a bag of fluid, flow generator and specialised nasal cannulae (Optiflow®).
6. RFDS does not currently carry such a system and there are significant issues with "borrowing" equipment that has not been approved by our engineers for use in flight. Having said that most common types of equipment are commonly being used in paediatric retrieval elsewhere. Carriage of non-standard equipment requires approval of the chief pilot, in particular you must be able to tell him how much current the device draws. Also for consideration is the fact that a number of these devices do not have a battery power source for road transfers. RFDS does not carry bottled medical air.
7. A decision must be made pre-flight about continuing this therapy versus ceasing and using face mask oxygen or committing to ventilating the patient.
8. Indications:  
Bronchiolitis where there is hypoxia and mild to severe respiratory distress despite standard oxygen therapy.  
Acute respiratory failure – the evidence here is limited.  
Weaning from non-invasive ventilation.
9. Contraindications:  
Blocked nasal airway eg. choanal atresia  
Nasopharyngeal surgery or trauma  
Pneumothorax  
Fractured base of skull

### *Pre-flight and In-flight Management*

1. The patient must have successfully established on HFNC pre-flight for at least 2 hours with evidence of improvement, clinically and ideally blood gases.
2. If no improvement in two hours consider ventilation for transport (in the absence of non-invasive paediatric options.).

3. All patients must have a nasogastric or oro-gastric tube.
4. Consider need for a sea-level cabin.
5. Flows are commenced at 1L/kg/min and may increase to 2L/kg/min. FiO<sub>2</sub> is titrated to patient's target oxygenation.
6. Regular observations should include SaO<sub>2</sub>, RR, HR and work of breathing. Hourly checking of patency of cannula and condensation, water level in humidifier tubing. Ensure the cannula place no pressure on nasal septum or nares. Suction nose as required.
7. Observe for abdominal distension.
8. A rapid deterioration of SaO<sub>2</sub> or marked increase in work of breathing should raise immediate suspicion of pneumothorax.
9. Discuss commencement of therapy with receiving hospital consultant to ensure appropriate reception for patient.

## 16 OCCUPATIONAL & ADMINISTRATIVE

### 16.1 Occupational Exposure to Blood and Bodily Fluids

#### *Theory*

1. HIV, Hepatitis B and C may be transmitted by significant exposure to blood or other body fluids.
2. Prevention is the mainstay of protection, so standard infection control practices must be adhered to.
3. Risk of transmission is dependent on the type of injury sustained. A thorough risk assessment of each exposure must be performed by an RFDS medical officer.
4. Those exposed to a source positive for a blood-borne virus must be referred to an infectious diseases expert or clinical immunologist.

#### **Risks**

1. Risk of Hepatitis B infection carries the highest risk after exposure to a positive source (10-40%). Hepatitis B vaccine is advised for all at risk staff (Nurses, Doctors, Pilots and Engineers); this vaccine has a 90% rate of protection after 3 doses.
2. Risk of Hepatitis C transmission after needle-stick injury from positive source is 1.8%. Transmission from mucous membrane exposure is rare.
3. Risk of HIV transmission after percutaneous exposure from positive source is 0.3% and 0.09% from mucous membrane exposure.
4. High risk injuries are:
  - Deep injury from device visibly contaminated with blood.
  - Injury associated with hollow bore needle.
  - Source patient has late stage HIV or high viral load
  - Source patient with Hep B who is HBeAg +ve, HBV DNA detectable, high viral load.
  - Source patient with Hep C who is HCV RNA PCR detectable

#### **Procedure following injury or exposure**

1. First aid. If skin is exposed the area should be washed well immediately with soap and water. If water is not available, use 60-90% alcohol hand cleanser (such as located in red IV roll in the aircraft.)
2. If the injury is to mucous membranes (eyes, mouth etc.) flush with copious water or normal saline.
3. Report to RFDS doctor immediately. Notify the doctor directly if on the flight, or by satellite telephone or radio, irrespective of your location. RFDS doctor should follow these guidelines:
  - Perform a risk assessment (based on history of incident, knowledge of patient)
  - Arrange baseline blood tests from source and recipient.
  - Counsel recipient (regarding risk, required follow-up, precautions.)
  - Seek advice or arrange referral to infectious diseases or immunology expert (the Immunology registrar at RPH is on call all hours via switch board.)
  - Complete a Clinical Incident Report (Notify Director of Medical Services or Assistant Director of Medical Services immediately).



- Seek consent of recipient to forward follow-up results to office of Director of Medical Services.
- Worker's Compensation Report. Complete notification for a work-related injury.

## Risk Assessment

Table 19. Risk Assessment for Exposure to Bodily Fluids

| Non parenteral exposure (low risk)              | Intact skin  |
|---|--|
| <b>Doubtful exposure (low risk)</b>             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Superficial (not bleeding) intradermal injury with device thought NOT to be contaminated with bodily fluid.</li> <li>• Contamination of prior wound with substance other than blood.</li> <li>• Mucous membrane contact with substance other than blood.</li> </ul>                 |
| <b>Possible exposure (low to moderate risk)</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Superficial (not bleeding) intradermal injury from device thought to be contaminated with blood.</li> <li>• Prior wound contamination with blood.</li> <li>• Mucous membrane contact with blood.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Definite exposure (moderate risk)</b>        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Penetrating injury with needle contaminated with blood or bodily fluid.</li> <li>• Injection of &lt;1mL of blood or bodily fluid.</li> <li>• Laceration caused by visibly contaminated instrument.</li> <li>• In lab setting inoculation with HIV, HCV, HBV +ve tissues.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Massive exposure (high risk)</b>             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blood transfusion.</li> <li>• Injection of &gt;1mL blood or bodily fluid.</li> <li>• Parenteral exposure to lab specimens containing high titre of virus.</li> </ul>  |

## Medical Management

Table 20. Medical Management for Exposure to Bodily Fluids

| Source negative for blood borne virus | Source status unknown, or high risk, but negative   | Source Hep B positive   | Source Hep C positive  | Source HIV positive   |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|--|---|
| Offer repeat blood at 3 months        | <p>If high risk injury treat as for positive source.</p> <p>Note: It is impossible to test a sharp.</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If immune, no further action.</li> <li>• Non-immune - see post-exposure prophylaxis.</li> <li>• Rpt bloods at 3 and 6 months.</li> <li>• Provide behavioural counselling.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No treatment is available.</li> <li>• Refer to clinical microbiologist or hepatologist with Hep C expertise.</li> <li>• Repeat bloods, HCV RNA PCR @ 4, 8, 12 wks.</li> <li>• HCV ab @ 3 and 6 months.</li> <li>• Arrange counselling / support.</li> <li>• Provide behavioural counselling.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Immediate referral to immunologist (24 hr call) for advice on PEP. Truvada® available from regional and private hospitals.</li> <li>• PEP is best started with in 24hrs.</li> <li>• Expect immunologist to advise on risk of infection, signs and symptoms, effectiveness of PEP, side effects of PEP, advice on pregnancy, breast feeding and comorbidities.</li> <li>• Repeat testing at 6wks, 3 and 6 months.</li> <li>• Ensure ongoing counselling.</li> <li>• Provide behavioural counselling.</li> </ul> |

PEP = Post-exposure prophylaxis

### Hep B PEP for the non-immune

1. Unvaccinated
  - If source HBsAg +ve, give HBIG and initiate Hep B vaccination within 24 hrs.
  - If source is unknown, initiate Hep B vaccination within 24 hrs.
2. Previously vaccinated.
  - If adequate immunity, no treatment.
  - Non-responder (had 3 doses and re-immunised with 3 doses but still no response) should have 2 doses of HBIG (1st within 24 hrs, second in 1 month).
  - Response to previous immunisation unknown, test anti Hep B Ab's, if inadequate give 1 dose HBIG and vaccine booster. If adequate no further action.

### Risk Counselling

The nature of the injury and the status of the source must be ascertained in order to give accurate advice. Consider transmissibility information in "Risk Assessment" given at start of this guideline.

### Behavioural Counselling

*Hep C exposure.*

- May not donate blood, plasma, tissues or semen.
- Do not need to modify sexual practices, avoid pregnancy or refrain from breast feeding.
- Continue standard precautions with work practices.

**Hep B exposure in non-immune**

- If high risk injury may not donate blood, plasma, tissues or semen. Should avoid pregnancy until outcome known.
- Continuation of breastfeeding and sexual activity will depend on immune status of baby or partner.
- Work practices may need to be modified according to the nature of the work. (See DoH Policy for Health Care Workers with BBV Infections)

**HIV exposure**

- For 12 months may not donate tissues, blood, plasma, breast milk or semen.
- Sexual abstinence or protected sex (condoms) for a minimum of 3 months.
- Avoid pregnancy till 6 month surveillance complete.
- Cease breast feeding.
- Do not share needles, razors, toothbrushes.
- Cover open wounds with waterproof dressings.

***References***

Department of Health, Western Australia. Operational Directive Number: OD 0091/07, dated 20 December 2007. Management of Occupational Exposure to Blood and Body Fluids in the Health Care Setting.

NHMRC. Australian Immunisation Handbook (2007) 9<sup>th</sup> Ed.

## 16.2 Deceased Patients

### Theory

1. The death of a patient at any stage from pre-flight assessment or consultation through to admission at a receiving hospital must be recorded by filing a clinical incident form, this allows for accurate mortality reporting and where necessary appropriate compilation of records for coronial inquests.
2. All doctors are expected to know when and how a patient must be referred to the coroner, when it is acceptable to fill out a death certificate and how to fill out same.
3. RFDS aircraft generally should not be tasked to retrieve deceased persons as this makes the asset unable to respond to other emergencies.
4. The RFDS Director of Medical Services (or nominated deputy) must be notified at the time of death.

#### Patients to be referred to the coroner

- Deaths as a result of trauma, violence, criminal action, suicide.
- Death appears unexpected or unnatural.
- Deaths where the cause is not definitely known.
- Deaths where medical mismanagement is suspected.
- Deaths where you have not been the treating doctor in the most recent illness.
- Deaths where the doctor is unwilling to complete a death certificate.
- Death during or due to anaesthetic.
- Death during care (e.g. wards of the state) or custody, whilst detained under mental health act.

To refer a patient to the coroner either call the "Coronial Investigation Unit" (Police) or for remote areas the local police. The police are responsible for custody of the body, they may transport the body themselves or commonly arrange the government contracted undertaker to do so.

If a patient dies in flight, request operations staff contact the "Police Coronial Investigation Unit" (9267 5700) or local police to notify them of a sudden death. It should be requested that the aircraft be met to take over custody of the deceased. If there is no medical officer on board arrangements should be made for a medical officer to meet the aircraft. A medical officer must certify life extinct in the observation and treatment chart (this is not a death certificate merely documenting that the patient is dead). All lines and tubes should be left in situ, copies of all documentation should be made for the police or their contracted undertaker. Permission should be sought from the police to remove the patient from the aircraft if needed to free the aircraft up for further tasking and /or get body and staff out of the heat.

If unsure death is reportable call the Coroner's Delegate on 9425 2900 or 0419 904 478.

For any queries contact the Coroner's Office on 1800 671 994.

#### Completing a death certificate

1. You must have been the treating (for at least 30 min) doctor during the last illness.
2. You must have a definitive diagnosis. Give the cause of death not the mode of dying. (i.e. not respiratory failure when the patient had pneumonia). Causative organisms should be recorded for infectious diseases and histological diagnosis plus location of primary for neoplastic causes.
3. The cause of death and all contributing factors must be documented.

4. Do not use abbreviations.
5. The death certificate should be handed to the undertaker responsible for the body.
6. Note there is a special perinatal (of at least 20wks gestation or any death in the first 28 days of life) death certificate though in our practice we would refer most of these to the coroner.

### **Destination of patients who have died in flight**

If a patient dies in flight the patient should be returned to the originating hospital or flown on to the destination depending on which is closest and logistically most appropriate.

For patients who have a completed death certificate an undertaker should be contacted, preferably attempt to find out who the family would prefer, otherwise in Perth, Donald Chipper and Son (the family can liaise with them if they wish to change). Operations staff should do this to ensure the deceased can be handed over promptly on landing.

### **Death at referring location and prior departure**

Should a death occur in presence of RFDS staff without having actually taken off with the patient, responsibility for notification of coroner or death certification can be passed back to the referring doctor, unless this occurs in a primary location in which case this remains an RFDS responsibility.

### **Notification of next of kin**

The RFDS medical officer certifying life extinct should contact the referring doctor and ask them to notify the next of kin. For primary retrievals this may be more difficult, the RFDS doctor may need to directly notify family, remote area nurse or request the police locate and notify the next of kin. Relatives who are accompanying patients who die in flight should have appropriate explanations, support and assistance offered on arrival.

### **Deaths in remote locations**

It is common to receive calls regarding patients found deceased, or for whom resuscitation is in progress. Ensure BLS/ALS protocols have been followed as appropriate. Follow-up support by telephone after the event is very important to debrief those involved and answer any questions they may have. We do not fly to retrieve deceased persons.

## **References**

Turnbull, R. The Coronial Process in Western Australia, A Handbook for Medical Practitioners and Medical Students. Office of the State Coroner. June 2010

Bird, S. "How to Complete a Death Certificate, A Guide for GPs." Australian Family Physician Vol 40, No.6. June 2011